

AI DIGITAL VIDEO RECORDER

User's Manual

V1.0.0

ZHEJIANG DAHUA VISION TECHNOLOGY CO., LTD.

Mandatory actions to be taken towards cybersecurity

1. Change Passwords and Use Strong Passwords:

The number one reason systems get "hacked" is due to having weak or default passwords. It is recommended to change default passwords immediately and choose a strong password whenever possible. A strong password should be made up of at least 8 characters and a combination of special characters, numbers, and upper and lower case letters.

2. Update Firmware

As is standard procedure in the tech-industry, we recommend keeping NVR, DVR, and IP camera firmware up-to-date to ensure the system is current with the latest security patches and fixes.

"Nice to have" recommendations to improve your network security

1. Change Passwords Regularly

Regularly change the credentials to your devices to help ensure that only authorized users are able to access the system.

2. Change Default HTTP and TCP Ports:

• Change default HTTP and TCP ports for systems. These are the two ports used to communicate and to view video feeds remotely.

• These ports can be changed to any set of numbers between 1025-65535. Avoiding the default ports reduces the risk of outsiders being able to guess which ports you are using.

3. Enable HTTPS/SSL:

Set up an SSL Certificate to enable HTTPS. This will encrypt all communication between your devices and recorder.

4. Enable IP Filter:

Enabling your IP filter will prevent everyone, except those with specified IP addresses, from accessing the system.

5. Change ONVIF Password:

On older IP Camera firmware, the ONVIF password does not change when you change the system's credentials. You will need to either update the camera's firmware to the latest revision or manually change the ONVIF password.

6. Forward Only Ports You Need:

• Only forward the HTTP and TCP ports that you need to use. Do not forward a huge range of numbers to the device. Do not DMZ the device's IP address.

• You do not need to forward any ports for individual cameras if they are all connected to a recorder on site; just the NVR is needed.

7. Disable Auto-Login on SmartPSS:

Those using SmartPSS to view their system and on a computer that is used by multiple people should disable auto-login. This adds a layer of security to prevent users without the appropriate credentials from accessing the system.

8. Use a Different Username and Password for SmartPSS:

In the event that your social media, bank, email, etc. account is compromised, you would not want someone collecting those passwords and trying them out on your video surveillance system. Using a different username and password for your security system will make it more difficult for someone to guess their way into your system.

9. Limit Features of Guest Accounts:

If your system is set up for multiple users, ensure that each user only has rights to features and functions they need to use to perform their job.

10. UPnP:

• UPnP will automatically try to forward ports in your router or modem. Normally this would be a good thing. However, if your system automatically forwards the ports and you leave the credentials defaulted, you might end up with unwanted visitors.

• If you manually forwarded the HTTP and TCP ports in your router/modem, this feature should be turned off regardless. Disabling UPnP is recommended when the function is not used in real applications.

11. SNMP:

Disable SNMP if you are not using it. If you are using SNMP, you should do so only temporarily, for tracing and testing purposes only.

12. Multicast:

Multicast is used to share video streams between two recorders. Currently there are no known issues involving Multicast, but if you are not using this feature, deactivation can enhance your network security.

13. Check the Log:

If you suspect that someone has gained unauthorized access to your system, you can check the system log. The system log will show you which IP addresses were used to login to your system and what was accessed.

14. Physically Lock Down the Device:

Ideally, you want to prevent any unauthorized physical access to your system. The best way to achieve this is to install the recorder in a lockbox, locking server rack, or in a room that is behind a lock and key.

The regulatory information herein might vary according to the model you purchased. Some information is only applicable for the country or region where the product is sold.

FCC Information

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

FCC conditions:

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference.
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC compliance:

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. This equipment generate, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the guide, may cause harmful interference to radio communication.

- For class A device, these limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a commercial environment. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.
- For class B device, these limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:
 - Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
 - Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
 - Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
 - Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

General

This user's manual (hereinafter referred to be "the Manual") introduces the functions and operations of the DVR devices (hereinafter referred to be "the Device").

Models

Series	Models	
AI series	DH-XVR8216A-4KL-I/DH-XVR8208A-4K-I	

Safety Instructions

The following categorized signal words with defined meaning might appear in the Manual.

Signal Words	Meaning
	Indicates a high potential hazard which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.
	Indicates a medium or low potential hazard which, if not avoided, could result in slight or moderate injury.
	Indicates a potential risk which, if not avoided, could result in property damage, data loss, lower performance, or unpredictable result.
© TIPS	Provides methods to help you solve a problem or save you time.
	Provides additional information as the emphasis and supplement to the text.

Revision History

No.	Version	Revision Content	Release Time
1	V1.0.0	First Release.	October 26, 2018

Privacy Protection Notice

As the device user or data controller, you might collect personal data of others such as face, fingerprints, car plate number, Email address, phone number, GPS and so on. You need to be in compliance with the local privacy protection laws and regulations to protect the legitimate

rights and interests of other people by implementing measures include but not limited to: providing clear and visible identification to inform data subject the existence of surveillance area and providing related contact.

About the Manual

- The Manual is for reference only. If there is inconsistency between the Manual and the actual product, the actual product shall prevail.
- We are not liable for any loss caused by the operations that do not comply with the Manual.
- The Manual would be updated according to the latest laws and regulations of related regions. For detailed information, see the paper manual, CD-ROM, QR code or our official website. If there is inconsistency between paper manual and the electronic version, the electronic version shall prevail.
- All the designs and software are subject to change without prior written notice. The product updates might cause some differences between the actual product and the Manual. Please contact the customer service for the latest program and supplementary documentation.
- There still might be deviation in technical data, functions and operations description, or errors in print. If there is any doubt or dispute, please refer to our final explanation.
- Upgrade the reader software or try other mainstream reader software if the Manual (in PDF format) cannot be opened.
- All trademarks, registered trademarks and the company names in the Manual are the properties of their respective owners.
- Please visit our website, contact the supplier or customer service if there is any problem occurred when using the device.
- If there is any uncertainty or controversy, please refer to our final explanation.

Important Safeguards and Warnings

This Chapter describes the contents covering proper handling of the Device, hazard prevention, and prevention of property damage. Read these contents carefully before using the Device, comply with them when using, and keep it well for future reference.

Operation Requirement

- Do not place or install the Device in a place exposed to sunlight or near the heat source.
- Keep the Device away from dampness, dust or soot.
- Keep the Device installed horizontally on the stable place to prevent it from falling.
- Wall-mounting is not supported.
- Do not drop or splash liquid onto the Device, and make sure there is no object filled with liquid on the Device to prevent liquid from flowing into the Device.
- Install the Device in a well-ventilated place, and do not block the ventilation of the Device.
- Operate the device within the rated range of power input and output.
- Do not dissemble the Device.
- Transport, use and store the Device under the allowed humidity and temperature conditions.

Electrical Safety

- Use the battery of specified manufacturer; otherwise there might result in explosion. When replacing battery, make sure the same type is used. Improper battery use might result in fire, explosion, or inflammation.
- Follow the instructions to dispose of the used battery.
- Use the recommended power cables in the region and conform to the rated power specification.
- Use the power adapter provided with the Device; otherwise, it might result in people injury and device damage.
- The power source shall conform to the requirement of the Safety Extra Low Voltage (SELV) standard, and supply power with rated voltage which conforms to Limited power Source requirement according to IEC60950-1. Please note that the power supply requirement is subject to the device label.
- Connect the device (I-type structure) to the power socket with protective earthing.
- The appliance coupler is a disconnection device. When using the coupler, keep the angle for easy operation.

Table of Contents

Cybersecurity Recommendations	I
Regulatory Information	III
Foreword	IV
Important Safeguards and Warnings	VI
1 Introduction	1
1.1 Overview	1
1.2 Functions	1
2 Getting Started	4
2.1 Checking the Components	4
2.2 Installing HDD	4
3 The Grand Tour	7
3.1 Front Panel	7
3.2 Rear Panel	7
3.3 Remote Control Operations	8
3.4 Mouse Operations	10
4 Connecting Basics	
4.1 Typical Connection Diagram	12
4.2 Connecting to Video and Audio Input and Output	13
4.2.1 Video Input	13
4.2.2 Video Output	13
4.2.3 Audio Input	14
4.2.4 Audio Output	14
4.3 Connecting to Alarm Input and Output	14
4.3.1 Introducing Alarm Port	15
4.3.2 Alarm Input	15
4.3.3 Alarm Output	
4.3.4 Alarm Output Relay Parameters	16
5 Local Configurations	17
5.1 Initial Settings	17
5.1.1 Booting up	17
5.1.2 Initializing the Device	
5.1.3 Resetting Password	20
5.1.4 Setting Up with the Startup Wizard	27
5.2 Live View	
5.2.1 Live View Screen	
5.2.2 Live View Control bar	
5.2.3 Navigation Bar	49
5.2.4 Shortcut Menu	50
5.2.5 AI Preview Mode	52
5.2.6 Color Setting	
5.2.7 Live View Display	55

5.2.8 Configuring Tour Settings	61
5.3 Entering Main Menu	
5.4 Controlling PTZ Cameras	
5.4.1 Configuring PTZ Connection Settings	
5.4.2 Working with PTZ Control Panel	
5.4.3 Configuring PTZ Functions	
5.4.4 Calling PTZ Functions	
5.4.5 Calling OSD Menu	
5.5 Configuring Camera Settings	75
5.5.1 Configuring Image Settings	75
5.5.2 Configuring Encode Settings	
5.5.3 Configuring Snapshot Settings	
5.5.4 Configuring Overlay Settings	
5.5.5 Configuring Covered Area Settings	
5.5.6 Configuring Channel Type	
5.5.7 Upgrading Coaxial Camera	
5.6 Configuring Remote Devices	
5.6.1 Adding Remote Devices	
5.6.2 Managing Remote Devices	
5.7 Configuring Record Settings	100
5.7.1 Enabling Record Control	
5.7.2 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule	
5.8 Configuring Snapshot Settings	102
5.8.1 Configuring Snapshot Trigger	
5.8.2 Configuring Snapshot Storage Schedule	
5.8.3 Backing up Snapshots to FTP	
5.9 Playing Back Video	
5.9.1 Enabling Record Control	
5.9.2 Instant Playback	
5.9.3 Main Interface of Video Playback	
5.9.4 Smart Search	
5.9.5 Marking and Playing Back Video	
5.9.6 Playing Back Snapshots	
5.9.7 Playing Back Splices	
5.9.8 Using the File List	
5.10 Alarm Events Settings	
5.10.1 Alarm Information	
5.10.2 Alarm Input Settings	
5.10.3 Alarm Output Settings	
5.10.4 Video Detection	
5.10.5 System Events	
5.11 AI Function	
5.11.1 Face Detection	
5.11.2 Face Recognition	
5.11.3 Configuring IVS Function	
5.12 IoT Function	
5.12.1 Configuring Sensor Settings	

5.12.2 Configuring Temperature and Humidity Camera	187
5.12.3 Configuring Wireless Siren	199
5.13 Configuring POS Settings	200
5.13.1 Searching the Transaction Records	200
5.13.2 Configuring POS Settings	201
5.14 Configuring Backup Settings	202
5.14.1 Finding USB Device	202
5.14.2 Backing up Files	203
5.15 Network Management	204
5.15.1 Configuring Network Settings	204
5.15.2 Configuring Network Testing Settings	221
5.16 Configuring Account Settings	225
5.16.1 Configuring User Account	225
5.16.2 Configuring Group Account	231
5.16.3 Configuring Onvif Users	235
5.17 Audio Management	236
5.17.1 Configuring Audio Files	236
5.17.2 Configuring Playing Schedule for Audio Files	238
5.18 Storage Management	240
5.18.1 Configuring Basic Settings	240
5.18.2 Configuring the Recording and Snapshot Schedule	241
5.18.3 Configuring HDD Manager	
5.18.4 Configuring HDD Detecting Settings	
5.18.5 Configuring Record Estimate	
5.18.6 Configuring FTP Storage Settings	
5.19 Configuring System Settings	
5.19.1 Configuring General System Settings	
5.19.2 Configuring Security Settings	
5.19.3 Configuring System Maintenance Settings	
5.19.4 Exporting and Importing System Settings	
5.19.5 Restoring Default Settings	
5.19.6 Upgrading the Device	
5.20 Viewing Information	
5.20.1 Viewing Version Details	
5.20.2 Viewing Log Information	
5.20.3 Viewing Event Information	
5.20.4 Viewing Network Information	
5.20.5 Viewing HDD Information 5.20.6 Viewing Channel Information	
5.20.7 Viewing Data Stream Information	
5.20.7 Viewing Data Stream mormation	
6 Web Operations	
6.1 Connecting to Network	
6.2 Logging in the Web	
6.3 Resetting Password	
6.4 Introducing Web Main Menu	
7 FAQ	

Appendix 1 Glossary	283
Appendix 2 HDD Capacity Calculation	285
Appendix 3 Compatible Backup Devices	287
Appendix 3.1 Compatible USB list	287
Appendix 3.2 Compatible SD Card list	288
Appendix 3.3 Compatible Portable HDD list	288
Appendix 3.4 Compatible USB DVD List	288
Appendix 3.5 Compatible SATA DVD List	288
Appendix 3.6 Compatible SATA HDD List	289
Appendix 4 Compatible CD/DVD Burner List	294
Appendix 5 Compatible Displayer List	295
Appendix 6 Compatible Switcher	296
Appendix 7 Earthing	297
Appendix 7.1 What Is the Surge	297
Appendix 7.2 The Earthing Modes	298
Appendix 7.3 Thunder Proof Ground Method in the Monitor System	299
Appendix 7.4 The Shortcut Way to Check the Electric System by Digital Multimeter	300
Appendix 8 RJ45-RS-232 Connection Cable Definition	303

1.1 Overview

The Device is an excellent digital monitor product for security industry. The embedded LINUX OS assures the stable operation. The H.265 and G.711 technologies assure the high quality image and low bit stream. The frame-by-frame play function displays more details for analysis, and provides the functions such as record, playback, and monitor and assures the synchronization for audio and video. The Device also adopts the advanced control technology and great network data transmission capability.

The Device adopts embedded design to achieve high security and reliability. It can work in the local end and, with strong networking capability it can get connected to the professional surveillance software (Smart PSS) to form a security network to show its powerful remote monitoring function.

The Device is applicable to the areas such as bank, telecom, electricity, traffic, intelligent residential district, factory, warehouse, resources, and water conservancy facilities.

1.2 Functions

The functions might be different depending on the software and hardware version of the model you purchased.

AI Function

- Support face detection that analyzes the attributes such as age, gender, glasses, beard, mask, and then make structured of these data to store for quick search.
- Support face recognition that compares the captured face snapshot with the face library and link the configured alarms (face detection should be enabled).
- Support searching by picture that is convenient for finding the target picture from database.
- Support 16 channel IVS function that includes tripwire and intrusion detection. The IVS function can avoid wrong alarms by filtering the factors such as rains, light, and animals.
- Calculate the quantity of detected persons within 24 hours.
- Detect the vehicles passing by within 24 hours.

Real-time Surveillance

- Support VGA port and HDMI port to realize the surveillance through monitors.
- Support HDMI, VGA, and TV output at the same time.

IoT Management

Provide specific management module for IoT features including humidity and temperature data reports and alarms linkage.

Sensor Integration

Integrate coaxial cameras with diverse array of sensors such as temperature, humidity and wireless alarm devices.

Storage Management

- Special data format to guarantee data security and avoid the risk of modifying data viciously.
- Support digital watermark.

Compression Format

Support multiple-channel audio and video signal. An independent hardware decodes the audio and video signal from each channel to maintain video and audio synchronization.

Backup Function

- Support backup operation through USB port (such as USB storage disk, portable HDD, and burner).
- Client-end user can download the file from local HDD through network to backup.

Record & Playback

- Support each channel real-time record independently, and simultaneously support the functions such as search, backward play, network monitor, record search, and download.
- Support various playback modes: slow play, fast play, backward play and frame by frame play.
- Support time title overlay so that you can view event accurate occurred time.
- Support zooming in the selected area in the live view.

Network Operation

Support network remote real-time monitor, remote record search and remote PTZ control.

Alarm Activation

- Several relay alarm outputs to realize alarm activation and on-site light control.
- The alarm input port and output port have the protection circuit to guarantee the Device safety.

Communication Port

- RS-485 port can realize alarm input and PTZ control.
- RS-232 port can connect to keyboard, COM port of PC or the matrix control.
- Standard Ethernet port can realize network remote access function.
- The dual-network port has the multi-address, fault tolerance, load balance setup mode.

PTZ Control

Support PTZ decoder through RS-485 port.

Intelligent Operation

- Support mouse operation function.
- Support "copy and paste" function for the same settings.

UPnP (Universal Plug and Play)

Establish mapping connection between LAN and WAN through UPnP protocol.

Camera Self-adaptive

Auto-recognize and work with the PAL or NTSC camera and HD camera.

2 Getting Started

2.1 Checking the Components

The actual appearance, component, or quantity might be different depending on the model you purchased.

When you receive the Device, please check against the following checking list. If any of the items are missing or damaged, contact the local retailer or after-sales engineer immediately.

Sequence	Checking items		Requirement
1	Package	Appearance	No obvious damage.
		Packing materials	No broken or distorted positions that could be caused by hit.
2	Labels	Labels on the device	Not torn up. NOTE Do not tear up or throw away the labels; otherwise the warranty services are not ensured. You need to provide the serial number of the product when you call the after-sales service.
	Device	Appearance	No obvious damage.
3		Data cables, power cables, fan cables, mainboard	No connection loose.

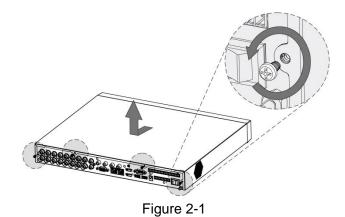
2.2 Installing HDD

Please check whether the HDD is already installed in the Device when you first time using the Device. It is suggested to use the HDD recommended officially. Do not use the PC HDD.

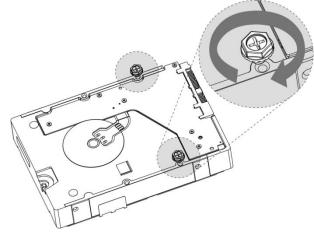


Shut down the device and then unplug the power cable before you open the case to replace the HDD.

Step 1 Remove the screws to take off the cover.



Step 2 Put two screws on the HDD and twist one turn.





<u>Step 3</u> Align the two screws with the holes on the device.

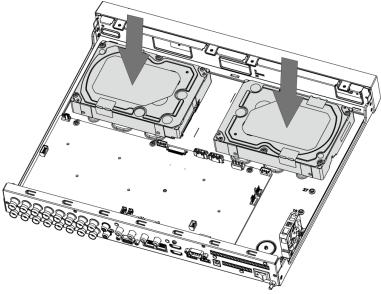


Figure 2-3

<u>Step 4</u> Turn the device and put in the other two screws, and then fasten all screws to fix the HDD to the device.

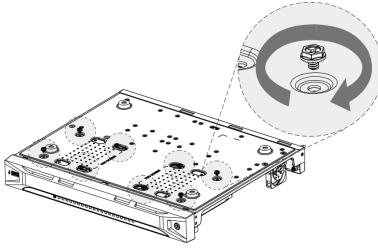
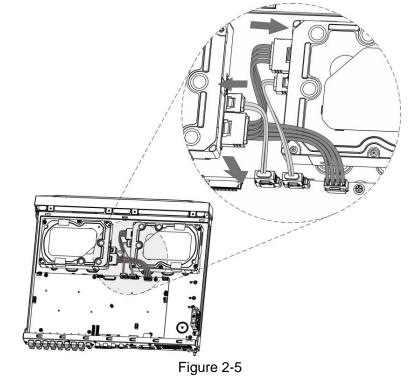


Figure 2-4

<u>Step 5</u> Use power cable and data cable to connect the device and HDD.



<u>Step 6</u> Put back the cover and fasten the screws.

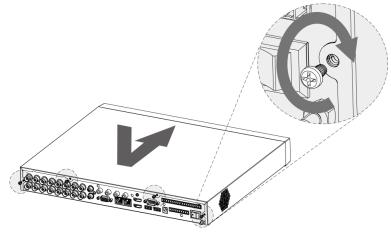


Figure 2-6

3 The Grand Tour

This chapter introduces various components of the Device, remote control and mouse operations.

3.1 Front Panel



Figure 3-1

No.	Indicator/Port	Function	
1 LICP part	USB port	Connects to peripheral devices such as USB storage	
		device, keyboard, and mouse.	

Table 3-1

3.2 Rear Panel

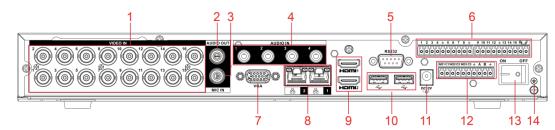


Figure 3-2

No.	Port Name	Function
1	Video input port	Connects to analog camera to input video signal.
2	Audio output port	Outputs audio signal to the devices such as the sound box.
3	MIC IN	Two-way talk input port which receives analog audio signal output from the devices such as microphone and pickup.
4	Audio input port	Receives audio signal output from the devices such as microphone.
5	RS-232 debug COM	The port is used for general COM debug to configure IP address or transfer transparent COM data.

No.	Port Name	Function	
6	Alarm input port 1–16	4 groups of alarm input ports (Group 1: port 1 to port 4; Group 2: port 5 to port 8; Group 3: port 9 to port 12; Group 4: port 13 to port 16). These ports receive the signal from the external alarm source. There are two types: NO (normal open) and NC (normal close). NOTE When your alarm input device is using external power, please make sure the input device and the DVR connect to the same ground.	
	ŧ	Ground terminal.	
7	VGA port	Outputs analog video data to the connected display with VGA port.	
8	Network port	Connects to Ethernet port.	
9	HDMI port	High definition audio and video signal output port. The port outputs the uncompressed high definition video and multi-channel audio data to the connected display with HDMI port.	
10	USB port	Connects to the external devices such as keyboard, mouse, and USB storage device.	
11	Power input port	Inputs power.	
12	Alarm output port 1– 5 (NO1–NO5; C1–C5; NC5)	 5 groups of alarm output ports (Group 1: port NO1– C1,Group 2:port NO2–C2,Group 3:port NO3–C3, Group 4: port NO4–C4, Group 5: port NO5, C5, NC5). These ports output alarm signal to the alarm device. Please make sure power supply to the external alarm device. NO: Normal open alarm output port. C: Alarm output public end. NC: Normal close alarm output port. 	
13	Power button	Turns on/off the DVR.	
14	Ŧ	Ground.	

Table 3-2

3.3 Remote Control Operations

Please note the remote control is not our standard accessory and might not be included in the accessary bag. It is supplied dependent on the model you purchased.

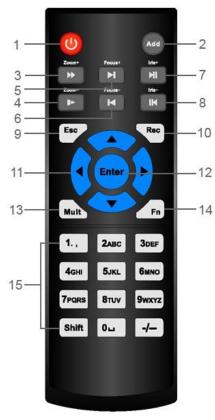


Figure 3-3

No.	Name	Function	
1	Power button	Press this button to boot up or shut down the device.	
2	Address	Press this button to input device serial number, so that you can	
2	Address	control the Device.	
3	Forward	Multi-step forward speed and normal speed playback.	
4	Slow motion	Multi-step slow motion speed or normal playback.	
5	Next record	In playback state, press this button to play back the next video.	
6	Previous record	In playback state, press this button to play back the previous video.	
7	Play/Pause	 In normal playback state, press this button to pause playback. In pause state, press this button to resume to normal playback. In live view window interface, press this button to enter video search menu. 	
8	Reverse/pause	In the reverse playback state, press this button to pause reverse playback. In the reverse playback pause state, press this button to resume to playback reversing state.	
9	Esc.	Go back to previous menu or cancel current operation (close front interface or control).	
10	Record	 Start or stop record manually. In record interface, use the direction buttons to select the channel that you want to record. Press this button for at least 1.5 seconds, and the manual record interface will be displayed. 	

No.	Name	Function			
11	Direction keys	Switch between current activated controls by going left or right. In playback state, the keys control the playback progress bar. Aux function (such as operating the PTZ menu).			
12	Enter/menu key	 Confirms an operation. Go to the OK button. Go to the menu. 			
13	Multiple-window switch	Switch between multiple-window and one-window.			
14	Fn	 In single-channel monitoring mode, press this button to display the PTZ control and color setting functions. Switch the PTZ control menu in PTZ control interface. In motion detection interface, press this button with direction keys to complete setup. In text mode, press and hold this button to delete the last character. To use the clearing function: Long press this button for 1.5 seconds. In HDD menu, switch HDD recording time and other information as indicated in the pop-up message. 			
15	Alphanumeric keys	 Input password, numbers. Switch channel. Press Shift to switch the input method. 			

Table 3-3

3.4 Mouse Operations

The operations are based on the considerations for right-handed users.

Operation	Function				
	Password input dialogue box pops up if you have not logged in yet.				
	In live view window interface, you can go to the main menu.				
	When you have selected one menu item, click it to view menu content.				
	Implement the control operation.				
Click left mouse	Modify check box or motion detection status.				
button	Click combo box to pop up drop-down list.				
	In text box, click the corresponding button on the panel to enter a numeral				
	or English character (small/capitalized).				
	In English input mode: Click to enter a backspace and click				
	to delete the previous character.				

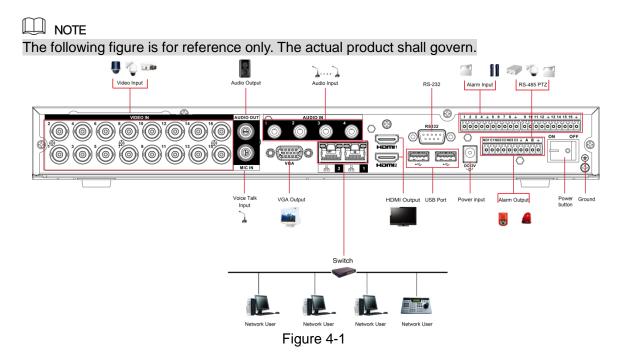
Operation	Function			
	!?@#\$%=+*← 123 qwertyuiop/ 456 asdfghjkl:Enter 789 Zxcvbnm,.Shift □0&			
	 In numeral input mode: Click I to clear and click I to delete the 			
	previous character.			
	$ \begin{array}{c} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \\ 0 & \checkmark \leftarrow \end{array} $			
	Implement special control operations such as double-click one item in the			
Double-click left	file list to play back the video. In multiple-window mode, double-click one channel to view in full-window.			
mouse button	Double-click current video again to go back to previous multiple-window mode.			
Right-click	Right-click in live view window interface, the shortcut menu is displayed. For different series product, the shortcut menu may vary.			
5	Exit current menu without saving the modification.			
	In numeral input box: Increase or decrease numeral value.			
Click scroll wheel button	Switch the items in the combo box.			
	Page up or page down.			
Point to select and move	Select current control and move it.			
Dragging a	Select motion detection zone.			
selection box with left mouse button	Select privacy mask zone.			

Table 3-4

4 Connecting Basics

This chapter introduces the typical connection diagrams and ports connections.

4.1 Typical Connection Diagram



4.2 Connecting to Video and Audio Input and Output

4.2.1 Video Input

The video input interface is BNC. The input video format includes: PAL/NTSC BNC ($1.0V_{P-P}$, 75Ω).

The video signal should comply with your national standards.

The input video signal shall have high SNR, low distortion; low interference, natural color, and suitable lightness.

Guarantee the stability and reliability of the camera signal

The camera shall be installed in a cool, dry place away from the conditions such as direct sunlight, inflammable, and explosive substances.

The camera and the DVR should have the same grounding to ensure the normal operation of the camera.

Guarantee stability and reliability of the transmission line

Please use high quality, sound shielded BNC. Please select suitable BNC model according to the transmission distance.

If the distance is too long, you should use twisted pair cable, and you can add video compensation devices or use optical fiber to ensure video quality.

You should keep the video signal away from the strong electromagnetic interference, especially the high tension current.

Keep connection lugs in well contact

The signal line and shielded wire should be fixed firmly and in well connection. Avoid dry joint, lap welding, and oxidation.

4.2.2 Video Output

Video output includes a BNC (PAL/NTSC1.0V_{P-P}, 75 Ω) output, a VGA output, and HDMI output. System supports BNC, VGA and HDMI output at the same time.

When you are using pc-type monitor to replace the monitor, please pay attention to the following points:

- To defer aging, do not allow the pc monitor to run for a long time.
- Regular demagnetization will keep device maintain proper status.
- Keep it away from strong electromagnetic interference devices.

Using TV as video output device is not a reliable substitution method. You also need to reduce the working hour and control the interference from power supply and other devices. The low quality TV may result in device damage.

4.2.3 Audio Input

This series of products audio input port adopt BNC port.

Due to high impedance of audio input, please use active sound pick-up.

Audio transmission is similar to video transmission. Try to avoid interference, dry joint, loose contact and it shall be away from high tension current.

4.2.4 Audio Output

The audio output signal parameter is usually over 200mv 1K Ω (BNC or RCA). It can directly connect to low impedance earphone, active sound box or amplifier-drive audio output device.

If the sound box and the pick-up cannot be separated spatially, it is easy to arouse squeaking. In this case you can adopt the following measures:

- Use better sound pick-up with better directing property.
- Reduce the volume of the sound box.
- Using more sound-absorbing materials in decoration can reduce voice echo and improve acoustics environment.
- Adjust the layout of speaker and pickup to reduce squeaking.

4.3 Connecting to Alarm Input and Output

Please read the followings before connecting.

Alarm input

- Make sure alarm input mode is grounding alarm input.
- Grounding signal is needed for alarm input.
- Alarm input needs the low level voltage signal.
- Alarm input mode can be either NC (Normally Closed) or NO (Normally Open).
- When you are connecting two DVRs or you are connecting one DVR and one other device, use a relay to separate them.

Alarm output

The alarm output port should not be connected to high power load directly (It shall be less than 1A) to avoid high current which might result in relay damage. Use the contactor to realize the connection between the alarm output port and the load.

How to connect PTZ decoder

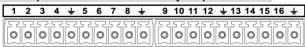
- Ensure the decoder has the same grounding with DVR; otherwise the PTZ might not be controlled. Shielded twisted wire is recommended and the shielded layer is used to connect to the grounding.
- Avoid high voltage. Ensure proper wiring and some thunder protection measures.
- For too long signal wires, 120Ω should be parallel connected between A, B lines on the far end to reduce reflection and guarantee the signal quality.
- "485 A, B" of DVR cannot parallel connect with "485 port" of other device.
- The voltage between of A, B lines of the decoder should be less than 5V.

Make sure the front-end device has soundly earthed

Improper grounding might result in chip damage.

4.3.1 Introducing Alarm Port

The alarm input ports are dependent on the model you purchased.



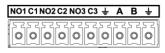


Figure 4-2

Icon	Description		
1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6,			
7, 8, 9, 10, 11,	ALARM 1 to ALARM 16. The alarm becomes active in low voltage.		
12, 13, 14, 15, 16			
NO1 C1, NO2 C2,	There are four groups of normally onen activation output (on/off button)		
NO3 C3	There are four groups of normally open activation output (on/off button).		
Ŧ	Ground cable.		
	485 communication port. They are used to control devices such as		
485 A/B	decoder. 120 Ω should be parallel connected between A, B lines if there		
	are too many PTZ decoders.		

Table 4-1

4.3.2 Alarm Input

Refer to the following figure for more information.

- Grounding alarm inputs which includes NO (Normally Open) and NC (Normally Closed) type.
- Parallel connect COM end and GND end of the alarm detector (Provide external power to the alarm detector).
- Parallel connect the Ground of the DVR and the ground of the alarm detector.
- Connect the NC port of the alarm sensor to the DVR alarm input (ALARM).
- Use the same ground with that of DVR if you use external power to the alarm device.

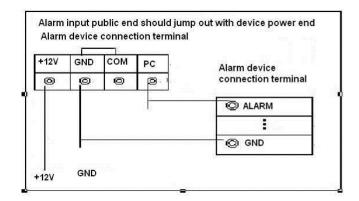


Figure 4-3

4.3.3 Alarm Output

- Provide external power to external alarm device.
- To avoid overloading, read the following relay parameters table carefully.
- RS-485 A/B cable is for the A/B cable of the PTZ decoder.

4.3.4 Alarm Output Relay Parameters

Refer to the actual product for relay model information.

Model		HFD23/005-1ZS	HRB1-S-DC5V	
Material of the touch		AgNi+ gold-plating	AuAg10/AgNi10/CuNi30	
	Rated switch capacity	30V DC 1A/125V AC 0.5A	24V DC 1A/125V AC 2A	
Rating (Resistance	Maximum switch power	62.5VA/30W	250VA/48W	
Load)	Maximum switch voltage	125V AC/60V DC	125V AC/60V DC	
	Maximum switch currency	2A	2A	
	Between touches	400VAC 1 minute	500VAC 1 minute	
Insulation	Between touch and winding	1000VAC 1 minute	1000VAC 1 minute	
Turn-on Time	9	5ms maximum	5ms maximum	
Turn-off Time	9	5ms maximum	5ms maximum	
Languarity	Mechanical	1×10 ⁷ times (300 times/MIN)	5×10 ⁶ times (300 times/MIN)	
Longevity	Electrical	1×10 ⁵ times (30 times/MIN)	2.5×10 ⁴ times (30 times/MIN)	
Working Terr	perature	-30℃—+70℃	-40℃—+70℃	

D Local Configurations

Read the following notes prior to using the Device.

🛄 NOTE

- The interfaces in the Manual are used for introducing the operations and only for reference. The actual interface might be different dependent on the model you purchased. If there is inconsistency between the Manual and the actual product, the actual product shall govern.
- The Manual is a general document for introducing the product, so there might be some functions described for the Device in the Manual not apply to the model you purchased.
- Conventions for mouse operations on a menu.
 - ♦ Click: On the menu, left-click the mouse once on an option to enter the option setting.
 - Right-click: On any interface, right-click the mouse once to return to the previous level.
 For details about mouse operations, see "3.4 Mouse Operations."

5.1 Initial Settings

5.1.1 Booting up



- Ensure the input voltage corresponds to the power requirement of the Device. Power on the Device after the power cable is properly connected.
- To protect the Device, connect the Device with the power cable first, and then connect to the power source.
- To ensure the stable work of the Device and the external devices connected to the Device and to prolong the HDD life, it is recommended to refer to the national related standard to use the power source that provides stable voltage with less interference from ripples. UPS power source is recommended.
- <u>Step 1</u> Connect the Device to the monitor.
- <u>Step 2</u> Plug in the power cable to the Device.
- <u>Step 3</u> Press the power button to turn on the Device. The power indicator light is on. On the connected monitor, the live view screen is displayed by default. If you turn on the Device during the time period that is configured for recording, the system starts recording after it is turned on, and you will see the icon indicating recording status is working in the specific channels.

5.1.2 Initializing the Device

When booting up for the first time, you need to configure the password information for **admin** (by default).

NOTE

To secure the Device, it is strongly recommended for you to properly keep the password for admin and modify it regularly.

<u>Step 1</u> Turn on the Device.

The **Device Initialization** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-1.

Device Initializa	tion						ڻ ا
1. Ente	r Password	→	2. Unlock	Pattern	→	3. Password Pro	otection
User	admin						
Passwo	ord ••••••			can be a con	nbinatio	has 8 to 32 charac n of letter(s), num	ber(s) and
Conf Pro	•••••					st two kinds of the ymbols like ' " ; : &)	em.(please
							Vext

Figure 5-1

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the password information for admin. For details, see Table 5-1.

Parameter	Description		
User	By default, the user is admin .		
Password	In the Password box, enter the password for admin.		
	The new password can be set from 8 characters through 32		
Confirm Password	characters and contains at least two types from number, letter and		
	special characters (excluding"'", """, ";", ":" and "&").		
	In the Prompt Question box, enter the information that can remind		
	you of the password.		
Prompt Question	NOTE NOTE		
	On the login interface, click 💼, the prompt will display to help you		
	find back the password.		
Ċ	Click to turn off the Device.		



Step 3 Click Next.

The unlock pattern setting interface is displayed. See Figure 5-2.

Device Initialization				
1. Enter Password		2. Unlock Pattern	→	3. Password Protection
	Plea	se draw the unlock pa	attern.	
		Figure 5.0	[Back Skip

Figure 5-2

<u>Step 4</u> Draw an unlock pattern.

After the setting is completed, the password protection settings interface is displayed. See Figure 5-3.

- The pattern that you want to set must cross at least four points.
- If you do not want to configure the unlock pattern, click Skip.
- Once you have configured the unlock pattern, the system will require the unlock pattern as the default login method. If you skip this setting, enter the password for login.

Device Initialization		
1. Enter Passwo	ord \rightarrow 2. Unlock Pattern \rightarrow 3. Password I	Protection
Email Address Security Questions	To reset password, please input p update in time	roperly or
Question 1	What is your favorite children's book?	•
Answer		
Question 2	What was the first name of your first boss?	-
Answer		
Question 3	What is the name of your favorite fruit?	•
Answer		
		Save

Figure 5-3

<u>Step 5</u> Configure the protection parameters for password. For details, see Table 5-2.
 After configuration, if you forget the password for admin user, you can reset the password through the reserved email address or security questions. For details about resetting the password, see "5.1.3 Resetting Password."
 If you do not want to configure the settings, disable the email address and security questions functions on the interface.

Password Protection Mode	Description				
	Enter the reserved email address.				
	In the Email Address box, enter an email address for password				
Email Address	reset. If you forget the password, enter the security code that you will				
	get from this reserved email address to reset the password of admin.				
Occurrity	Configure the security questions and answers.				
Security	If you forget the password, enter the answers to the questions can				
Questions	make you reset the password.				
	NOTE NOTE				
If you want to confi	If you want to configure the email or security questions function later or you want to				

If you want to configure the email or security questions fucntion later or you want to change the configurations, select **Main Menu > ACCOUNT > USER**.

Table 5-2

<u>Step 6</u> Click **Save** to complete the settings.

The End-User License Agreement interface is displayed.

- <u>Step 7</u> Select the I have read and agree to all terms check box.
- Step 8 Click Next.

The **Startup Wizard** interface is displayed. For details about quick settings during startup, see "5.1.3.3 Resetting Password

5.1.3 Resetting Password

You can reset the password by the following methods when you forget the password for admin account.

- If the password reset function is enabled, you can use mobile phone to scan the QR code to reset the password. For details, see "5.1.3.2 Resetting Password on Local Interface."
- If the password reset function is disabled, there are two situations:
 - If you configured security questions, you can find back the password by the security questions.
 - If you did not configure the security questions, you can only use the reset button on the mainboard to restore the Device to factory default. For details, see "5.1.3.3 Using Reset Button on the Mainboard."

Not all models are provided with reset button.

5.1.3.1 Enabling Password Reset Function

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > SYSTEM > SECURITY > System Service. The System Service interface is displayed. See Figure 5-4.

🗱 SYSTEM		LIVE 🔔 🕞 🗸 😤	
GENERAL	Access Right System Se	ervice	
RS232	Password Reset		
> SECURITY	Mobile Phone Push		
SYSTEM MAINTAIN			
IMP/EXP	CGI		
DEFAULT	ONVIF		
UPGRADE	Audio/Video Transmis		
	Audio/ video Transmis	The corresponding device or software shall support video decryption	
		function.	
		Apply Back	

Figure 5-4

<u>Step 2</u> Enable the **Password Reset** function.

This function is enabled by default.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to save the settings.

5.1.3.2 Resetting Password on Local Interface

<u>Step 1</u> Enter the login interface.

- If you have configured unlock pattern, the unlock pattern login interface is displayed. See Figure 5-5. Click **Forgot Pattern**, the password login interface is displayed. See Figure 5-6.
- If you did not configure unlock pattern, the password login interface is displayed. See Figure 5-6.

To login from other user account, on the unlock pattern login interface, click **Switch User**; or on the password login interface, in the **User Nam**e list, select other users to login.

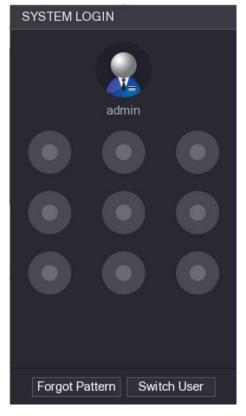


Figure 5-5

SYSTEM LOGIN							
admin			Fa				
			P				
OK	Cancel						
		admin	admin 🔹				

Figure 5-6

Step 2 Click

- If you have set the reserved email address, the **Prompt** message interface is displayed. See Figure 5-7.
- If you did not set the reserved email address, the email entering interface is displayed. See Figure 5-8. Enter the email address, and then click **Next**, the **Prompt** message interface is displayed. See Figure 5-7.

In order to provide a secure password reset environment, we need to collect your e-mail address, device MAC address, device SN, etc. All
collected info is used only for the purposes of verifying device validity and
sending a security code to you. Do you agree and want to continue the
operation?



Reset Password								
	Reset Type	QR Code						
	Email Address		To reset password, please inp	ut properly or update in time				
				Next Cancel				

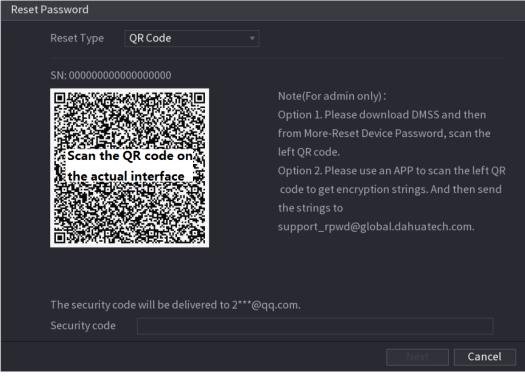
Figure 5-8

Step 3 Click OK.

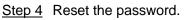
The Reset Password interface is displayed. See Figure 5-9.

NOTE

After clicking **OK**, the system will collect your information for password reset, and the information includes but not limited to email address, MAC address, and device serial number. Read the prompt carefully before clicking **OK**.







QR code

Follow the onscreen instructions to get the security code in your reserved email address. In the **Security code** box, enter the security code.



- You can get the security code twice by scanning the same QR code. If you need to get the security code once again, refresh the interface.
- Use the security code received in your email box to reset the password within 24 hours; otherwise the security code becomes invalid.
- Security questions
- On the Reset password interface as shown in Figure 5-8, in the Reset Type list, select Security Questions, the Security Questions interface is displayed, see Figure 5-10.

📖 note

If you did not configure the security questions before, in the **Reset Type** list, there will be no **Security Questions**.

2) In the **Answer** box, enter the correct answers.

Reset Password							
Reset Type	Security Questions 🔹						
Question 1 Answer							
Question 2 Answer							
Question 3 Answer							
	Next Cancel						

Figure 5-10

Step 5 Click Next.

The new password resetting interface is displayed. See Figure 5-11.

•	5		0	
Reset Password				
Reset password of (admin)			
New Password				
	Use a password that has 8	to 32 characters	it can be a	
	nbol(s) with at leas	t		
	two kinds of them.(please of			
Confirm Password				
			Save	Cancel

Figure 5-11

- <u>Step 6</u> In the **New Password** box, enter the new password and enter it again in the **Confirm Password** box.
- <u>Step 7</u> Click **Save**. The password resetting is started. After resetting is completed, a pop-up message is displayed.
- Step 8 Click OK.

A pop-up message is displayed asking if you want to sync the password with the remote devices, see Figure 5-12.

- Click **Cancel**, the resetting is finished.
- Click **OK**, the Sync Info interface is displayed. See Figure 5-12.

Reset the password	-		
Reset passwor	d of (admin)		
New Password	•••••	Use a password that has 8	
Confirm Passv	Message	aharaatara_it aan ha a aar	nbination of mbol(s) with at
Do you want to sync Passwor device connecting via the def			
	ОК	Cancel	
			ave Cancel

Figure 5-12

This message appears only when there are digital channels instead of only analog channels.

Syr	nc Ini	io			
Fi	nishe	ed			
	2	Channel	IP Address	Results	
			192.168.9.156	Password:Succeed	
	2	10	192.168.9.59	Password:Succeed	
•				,	
				Finished	

Figure 5-13

5.1.3.3 Using Reset Button on the Mainboard

You can always use the reset button on the mainboard to reset the Device to the factory default.

Not all models are provided with reset button.

- <u>Step 1</u> Disconnect the Device from power source, and then remove the cover panel. For details about removing the cover panel, see "2.2 Installing HDD."
- <u>Step 2</u> Find the reset button on the mainboard, and then connect the Device to the power source again.
- <u>Step 3</u> Press and hold the reset button for 5 seconds to 10 seconds. See Figure 5-14 for the location of the reset button.

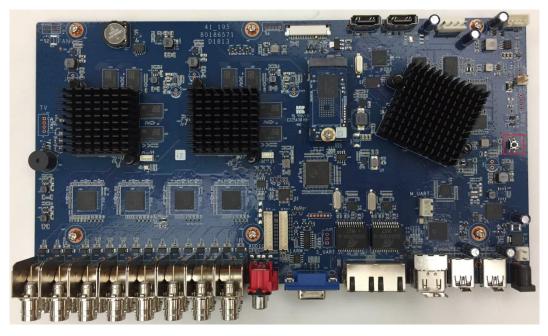


Figure 5-14

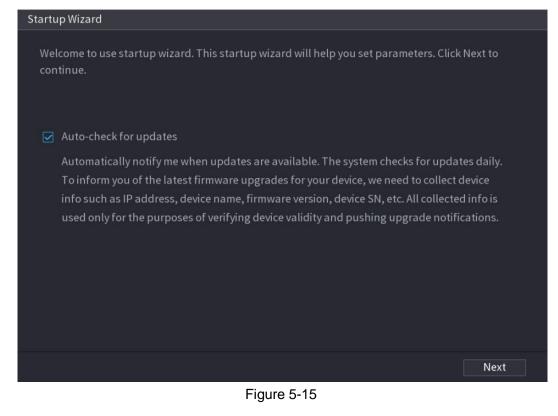
<u>Step 4</u> Reboot the Device.

After the Device is rebooted, the settings have been restored to the factory default. You can start resetting the password.

5.1.4 Setting Up with the Startup Wizard

5.1.4.1 Entering Startup Wizard

The Startup Wizard helps you configure the basic settings to set up the Device. After you have initialized the Device, the **Startup Wizard** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-15.



- If you select the **Auto-check for updates** check box, the system will notify you automatically when updates are available.
- After the auto-check function is enabled, to notify you to update timely, the system will collect the information such as IP address, device name, firmware version, and device serial number. The collected information is only used to verify the legality of the Device and push upgrade notices.
- If you clear the Auto-check for updates check box, the system will not perform automatic checks.

5.1.4.2 Configuring General Settings

You can configure the general settings for the Device such as Device name, language, and settings for instant playback.

You can also configure general settings by selecting **Main Menu > SYSTEM > GENERAL > General**.

Step 1 On the Startup Wizard interface, click Next.

The **General** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-16.

General			
Device Name	XVR		
Device No.	8		
Language	ENGLISH -		
Video Standard	NTSC 👻		
Instant Play(Min.)	5		
Auto Logout(Min.)	10	Monitor Channel(s) whe	en l
IPC Time Sync			
IPC Time Sync Period (hour)	24		
Navigation Bar			
Mouse Sensitivity	+	850	
		Back	Next

Figure 5-16

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the general settings parameters. See Table 5-3.

Parameter	Description
Device Name	In the Device Name box, enter the Device name.
Device No.	In the Device No. box, enter a number for the Device.
Language	In the Language list, select a language for the Device system.
Video Standard	In the Video Standard list, select PAL or NTSC according to your actual situation.
Instant Play (Min.)	In the Instant Play box, enter the time length for playing back the recorded video. The value ranges from 5 to 60. On the live view control bar, click the instant playback button to play back the recorded video within the configured time.
Auto Logout (Min.)	In the Auto Logout box, enter the standby time for the Device. The Device automatically logs out when it is not working for the configured time period. You need to login the Device again. The value ranges from 0 to 60. 0 indicates there is not standby time for the Device. Click Monitor Channel(s) when logout . You can select the channels that you want to continue monitoring when you logged out.
IPC Time Sync	Syncs the Device time with IP camera.
IPC Time Sync Period (hour)	In the IPC Time Sync Period box, enter the interval for time sync.
Navigation Bar	Enable the navigation bar. When you click on the live view screen, the navigation bar is displayed.
Mouse Sensitivity	Adjust the speed of double-click by moving the slider. The bigger the value is, the faster the double-clicking speed must be.

Table 5-3

5.1.4.3 Configuring Date and Time Settings

You can configure the system time, choose the time zone, set the daylight saving time, and enable the NTP server.

You can also configure date and time settings by selecting Main Menu > SYSTEM >

GENERAL > Date&Time.

<u>Step 1</u> After you have configured the general settings, on the **General** interface, click **Next**. The **Date&Time** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-17.

Date&Time	
System Time	2018 - 02 - 08 15 : 37 : 36
System Zone	(GMT+08:00)Beijing,Urumqi,Singapore
Date Format	YYYY MM DD 🔹
Date Separator	
Time Format	24-HOUR v
DST	📕 🧿 Week 🔿 Date
Start Time	Jan 🔻 1st 🔻 Su 👻 05:00
End Time	Jan 🔻 1st 💌 Mo 🔻 00:00
NTP	
Server	time.windows.com Manual Update
Port	123
Interval(Min.)	60
	Back

Figure 5-17

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for date and time parameters. See Table 5-4.

Parameter	Description	
	In the System Time box, enter time for the system.	
	Click the time zone list, you can select a time zone for the system, and	
	the time in adjust automatically.	
System Time		
	Do not change the system time randomly; otherwise the recorded video	
	cannot be searched. It is recommended to avoid the recording period or	
	stop recording first before you change the system time.	
System Zone	In the System Zone list, select a time zone for the system.	
Date Format	In the Date Format list, select a date format for the system.	
Date Separator	In the Date Separator list, select a separator style for the date.	
Time Format	In the Time Format list, select 12-HOUR or 24-HOUR for the time display style.	
DST	Enable the Daylight Saving Time function. Click Week or click Date.	

Parameter	Description
Start Time	Configure the start times and and times for the DCT
End Time	Configure the start time and end time for the DST.
NTP	Enable the NTP function to sync the Device time with the NTP server.
Server	In the Server box, enter the IP address or domain name of the corresponding NTP server. Click Manual Update , the Device starts syncing with the server immediately.
Port	The system supports TCP protocol only and the default setting is 123.
Interval (Min.)	In the Interval box, enter the amount of time that you want the Device to sync time with the NTP server. The value ranges from 0 to 65535.

Table 5-4

5.1.4.4 Configuring Network Settings

You can configure the basic network settings such as net mode, IP version, and IP address of the Device.

You can also configure network settings by selecting **Main Menu > NETWORK > TCP/IP**.

<u>Step 1</u> After you have configured the date and time settings, on the **Date&Time** interface, click **Next**.

NETWORK						
Net Mode	Multi-address		Default Ethernet	Ethernet Po	rt1 🔻	
Ethernet Card	Ethernet Port1		IP Version	IPv4		
MAC Address						
DHCP						
IP Address	192 . 168 . 20 . 13					
Subnet Mask	255 . 255 . 0 . 0					
Default Gateway	192 . 168 . 0 . 1					
DNS DHCP						
Preferred DNS	8.8.8.8					
Alternate DNS	8.8.4.4					
MTU	1500					
Test				Back	Next	
	Figuro 5	10				

The **NETWORK** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-18.

Figure 5-18

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for network parameters. See Table 5-5.

V	0	
Parameter	Description	

Parameter	Description	
Net Mode	 Multi-address: Two Ethernet ports work separately through eith of which you can request the Device to provide the services suc as HTTP and RTSP. You need to configure a default Ethernet por (usually the Ethernet port 1 by default) to request the services from the device end such as DHCP, Email and FTP. If one of the two Ethernet ports is disconnected as detected by networking testing the system network status is regarded as offline. Fault Tolerance: Two Ethernet ports share one IP address. Normally only one Ethernet ports is working automatically to ensure the network connection. When testing the network status, the network is regarded as offlicently when both of the two Ethernet ports are disconnected. The two Ethernet ports are used under the same LAN. Load Balance: Two network status, the network is regarded as offlicently only when both of the two Ethernet ports are disconnected. The two Ethernet ports are used under the same LAN. Load Balance: Two network status, the network is regarded as offlicently only when both of the two Ethernet ports are disconnected. The two Ethernet ports are used under the same LAN. Load Balance: Two network status, the network is regarded as offlicently only when both of the two Ethernet ports are disconnected. The two Ethernet ports are used under the same LAN. Morte The Device with single Ethernet port does not support this function. 	
Default Ethernet Port	In the Ethernet Card list, select an Ethernet port as a default port. This setting is available only when the Multi-address is selected in the Net Mode list.	
IP Version	In the IP Version list, you can select IPv4 or IPv6 . Both versions are supported for access.	
MAC Address	Displays the MAC address of the Device.	
DHCP	 Enable the DHCP function. The IP address, subnet mask and default gateway are not available for configuration once DHCP is enabled. If DHCP is effective, the obtained information will display in the IP Address box, Subnet Mask box and Default Gateway box. If not, all values show 0.0.0.0. If you want manually configure the IP information, disable the DHCP function first. If PPPoE connection is successful, the IP address, subnet mask, default gateway, and DHCP are not available for configuration. 	
IP Address	Enter the IP address and configure the corresponding subnet mask and	
Subnet Mask	default gateway.	
Default Gateway	IP address and default gateway must be in the same network segment.	
DNS DHCP	Enable the DHCP function to get the DNS address from router.	
Preferred DNS	In the Preferred DNS box, enter the IP address of DNS.	

Parameter	Description	
Alternate DNS	In the Alternate DNS box, enter the IP address of alternate DNS.	
MTU	 In the MTU box, enter a value for network card. The value ranges from 1280 byte through 1500 byte. The default is 1500. The suggested MTU values are as below. 1500: The biggest value of Ethernet information package. This value is typically selected if there is no PPPoE or VPN connection, and it is also the default value of some routers, network adapters and switches. 1492: Optimized value for PPPoE. 1468: Optimized value for DHCP. 1450: Optimized value for VPN. 	
Test	Click Test to test if the entered IP address and gateway are interworking.	

Table 5-5

5.1.4.5 Configuring P2P Settings

You can add the Device into your cell phone client or the platform to manage.

You can also configure P2P function by selecting **Main Menu > NETWORK > P2P**.

Make sure the DVR is connected into the Internet, and if yes, in the **Status** box of the P2P interface, it shows **Online**.

<u>Step 1</u> After you have configured the network settings, on the **NETWORK** interface, click **Next**.

The **P2P** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-19.

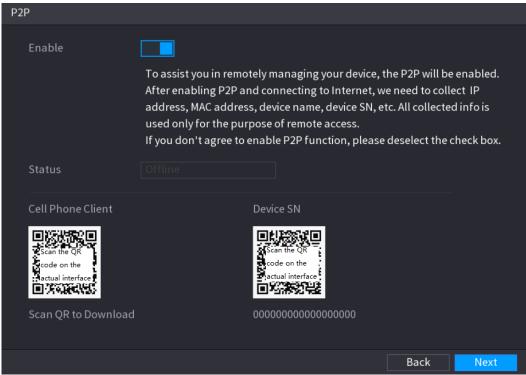


Figure 5-19

Step 2 Enable the P2P function.

After the P2P function is enabled and connected to the Internet, the system will collects your information for remote access, and the information includes but not limited to email address, MAC address, and device serial number.

You can start adding the device.

- Cell Phone Client: Use your mobile phone to scan the QR code to add the device into the Cell Phone Client, and then you can start accessing the Device.
- Platform: Obtain the Device SN by scanning the QR code. Go to the P2P management platform and add the Device SN into the platform. Then you can access and manage the device in the WAN. For details, refer to the P2P operation manual.

You can also enter the QR code of Cell Phone Client and Device SN by clicking

on the top right of the interfaces after you have entered the Main Menu.

To use this function, take adding device into Cell Phone Client as an example.

Adding Device into Cell Phone Client

- <u>Step 1</u> Use your cell phone to scan the QR code under Cell Phone Client to download the application.
- Step 2 On your cell phone, open the application, and then tap

The menu is displayed. You can start adding the device.

- 1) Tap Device Manager.
 - The **Device Manager** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-20.

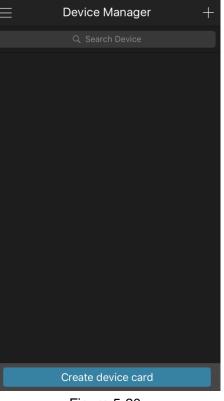


Figure 5-20

2) Tap an on the top right corner.

The interface requiring device initialization is displayed. A pop-up message reminding you to make sure the Device is initialized is displayed.

- 3) Tap **OK**.
 - ◇ If the Device has not been initialized, Tap **Device Initialization** to perform initializing by following the onscreen instructions.
 - $\diamond~$ If the Device has been initialized, you can start adding it directly.
- 4) Tap Add Device.

The Add Device interface is displayed. See Figure 5-21.

You can add wireless device or wired device. The Manual takes adding wired device as an example.

<	P2P
Register Mode:	P2P
Name:	
SN:	
Username:	admin
Password:	
Live Preview:	Extra >
Playback:	Extra >
Start I	Live Preview

Figure 5-21

5) Tap **P2P**.

The **P2P** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-22.

<	P2P	
Register Mode:		P2P
Name:		
SN:		
Username:	а	dmin
Password:		
Live Preview:		Extra >
Playback:		Extra >
Start	Live Preview	

Figure 5-22

6) Enter a name for the DVR, the username and password, scan the QR code under **Device SN**.

7) Tap Start Live Preview.

The Device is added and displayed on the live view interface of the cell phone. See Figure 5-23.



Figure 5-23

5.1.4.6 Configuring Encode Settings

You can configure the settings of main stream and sub stream for the Device.

The **Encode** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-24.

You can also configure encode settings by selecting **Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Encode**.

<u>Step 1</u> After you have configured the P2P settings, on the **P2P** interface, click **Next**.

ncode			
Channel	1 •		
Main Stream		Sub Stream	
Smart Codec		Video	
Туре	General 🔻	Туре	Sub Stream1 🔹
Compression	H.265 🔻	Compression	H.265 🔻
Resolution	1920x1080(1080P) -	Resolution	352x288(CIF) -
Frame Rate(FPS)	25 🔻	Frame Rate(FPS)	15 💌
Bit Rate Type	CBR 🔻	Bit Rate Type	CBR 🔻
l Frame Interval	1S 🔻	I Frame Interval	1S 🔻
Bit Rate(Kb/S)	2048 -	Bit Rate(Kb/S)	320 🔻
	More Setting		More Setting
Default Copy			Back Next

Figure 5-24

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the main/sub streams parameters. See Table 5-6.

Parameter	Description			
Channel	In the Channel list, select the channel that you want to configure the			
	settings for.			
	Enable the smart codec function. This function can reduce the video			
Smart Codec	bit stream for non-important recorded video to maximize the storage			
	space.			
	• Main Stream: In the Type list, select General , MD (Motion			
Туре	Detect), or Alarm .			
	Sub Stream: This setting is not configurable.			
	In the Compression list, select the encode mode.			
	• H.265: Main profile encoding. This setting is recommended.			
	H.264H: High profile encoding. Low bit stream with high			
Compression	definition.			
	H.264: Main profile encoding.			
	• H.264B: Baseline profile encoding. This setting requires higher bit			
	stream compared with other settings for the same definition.			
	In the Resolution list, select resolution for the video.			
Resolution	The maximum video resolution might be different dependent on your			
	device model.			

Parameter	Description				
	Configure the frames per second for the video. The higher the value				
	is, the clearer and smoother the image will become. Frame rate				
Frame Rate	changes along with the resolution.				
	Generally, in PAL format, you can select the value from 1 through 25;				
(FPS)	in NTSC format, you can select the value from 1 through 30. However,				
	the actual range of frame rate that you can select depends on the				
	capability of the Device.				
	In the Bit Rate Type list, select CBR (Constant Bit Rate) or VBR				
Bit Rate Type	(Variable Bit Rate). If you select CBR , the image quality cannot be				
	configured; if you select VBR , the image quality can be configured.				
Quality	This function is available if you select VBR in the Bit Rate List.				
Quanty	The bigger the value is, the better the image will become.				
I Frame Interval	The interval between two reference frames.				
	In the Bit Rate list, select a value or enter a customized value to				
Bit Rate (Kb/S)	change the image quality. The bigger the value is, the better the				
	image will become.				
Video	Enable the function for sub stream.				
	Click More Setting, the More Setting interface is displayed.				
Audio Encode	Audio Encode: This function is enabled by default for main				
	stream. You need to manually enable it for sub stream 1. Once				
	this function is enabled, the recorded video file is composite				
	audio and video stream.				
Audio Source	Audio Source: In the Audio Source list, you can select LOCAL				
	and HDCVI .				
	1. LOCAL: The audio signal is input from Audio In port.				
Audio Econost	2. HDCVI: The audio signal is input from HDCVI camera.				
Audio Format	• Audio Format: In the Audio Forma t list, select a format that you				
	need.				

Table 5-6

5.1.4.7 Configuring Snapshot Settings

You can configure the basic snapshot settings such as quantity of snapshot each time, channel(s) to take snapshot, and image size and quality of snapshot.

You can also configure general settings by selecting **Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot**.

For more information about snapshot settings, see "5.8 Configuring Snapshot Settings." <u>Step 1</u> After you have configured the encode settings, on the **Encode** interface, click **Next**.

The **SNAPSHOT** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-25.

SNAPSHOT				
Manual Snap	1	▼ /Time		
Channel	1			
Mode	General			
Image Size	352x288(CIF)			
Image Quality	4			
Interval	1 Second			
Default C	ору		Back Next	

Figure 5-25

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the snapshot parameters. See Table 5-7.

Parameter	Description			
Manual Shan	In the Manual Snap list, select how many snapshots you want to take			
Manual Snap	each time.			
Channel	In the Channel list, select the channel that you want to configure the			
Channel	settings for.			
	In the Mode list, you can select Human Face, Event, or General as			
	the event type for which you want to take a snapshot.			
	• General : The snapshot is taken during the scheduled period.			
Mode	• Event: The snapshot is taken when there is an alarm event			
Mode	occurs, such as motion detection event, video loss, and local			
	alarms.			
	• Human Face: The snapshot is taken when the face is detected.			
	The face detection function is support only with the Channel 1.			
Imaga Siza	In the Image Size list, select a value for the image. The bigger the			
Image Size	value is, the better the image will become.			
Image Quality	Configure the image quality by 6 levels. The higher the level is, the			
	better the image will become.			
Interval	Configure or customize the snapshot frequency.			

Table 5-7

5.1.4.8 Configuring Basic Storage Settings

You can configure the settings for the situations when HDD is full, file length and time length of recorded video, and the settings if to auto-delete the old files.

You can also configure basic storage settings by selecting **Main Menu > STORAGE > BASIC**.

<u>Step 1</u> After you have configured the encode settings, on the **SNAPSHOT** interface, click **Next**.

BASIC				
HDD Full	Overwrite 🔹			
Pack Mode	Time Length 🔹	60	Min.	
Auto-Delete Old Files	Never			
			Back	Next

The **BASIC** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-26.

Figure 5-26

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the basic storage settings parameters. See Table 5-8.

Parameter	Description			
	 Configure the settings for the situation when all the read/write discs are full, and there are no more free discs. Select Stop Record to stop recording 			
HDD Full	 Select Overwrite to overwrite the recorded video files always from the earliest time. 			
	NOTE The locked recorded video files will not be overwritten.			
Pack Mode	Configure the time length and file length for each recorded video.			
Auto-Delete Old Files	Configure whether to delete the old files and if yes, in the Auto-Delete Old Files list, select Customized to configure the time length for how long you want to keep the old files.			

Table 5-8

5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule

You can configure the schedule for the recorded video such as channels to record, alarm settings, and the armed period.

You can also configure recorded video storage settings by selecting **Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Record**.

<u>Step 1</u> After you have configured the basic storage settings, on the **BASIC** interface, click **Next**.

The **Record** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-27.

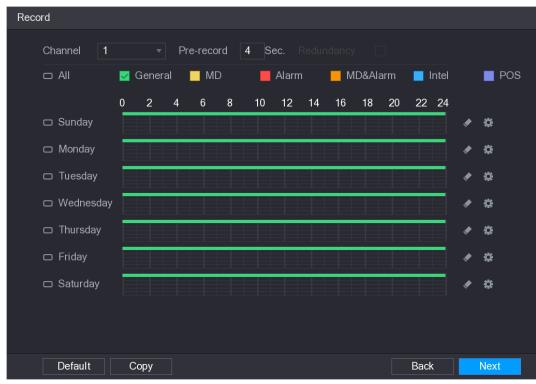


Figure 5-27

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the record settings parameters. See Table 5-9.

Parameter	Description			
Channel	In the Channel list, select a channel to record the video.			
Pre-record	In the Pre-record list, enter the amount of time that you want to start			
Fie-iecolu	the recording in advance.			
	If there are several HDDs installed to the Device, you can set one of			
	the HDDs as the redundant HDD to save the recorded files into			
	different HDDs. In case one of the HDDs is damaged, you can find the			
	backup in the other HDD.			
	• Select Main Menu > STORAGE > HDD MANAGER, and then			
	set a HDD as redundant HDD.			
	• Select Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDUE > Record, and			
	then select the Redundancy check box.			
Redundancy	\diamond If the selected channel is not recording, the redundancy function			
redundancy	takes effect next time you record no matter you select the check			
	box or not.			
	\diamond If the selected channel is recording, the current recorded files will			
	be packed, and then start recording according to the new			
	schedule.			
	NOTE NOTE			
	 Not all models support this function. 			
	• The redundant HDD only back up the recorded videos but not			
	snapshots.			
	Select the check box of the event type which includes General, MD			
Event type	(motion detect, video loss, tempering, diagnosis), Alarm (IoT alarms,			
	local alarms, alarms from alarm box, IPC external alarms, IPC Offline			
	alarms), MD&Alarm , Intel (IVS events, face detection), and POS .			

Parameter	Description		
	Define a period during which the configured recording setting is		
Period	active.		
	The system only activates the alarm in the defined period.		
Сору	Click Copy to copy the settings to other channels.		
	Table 5-9		

- <u>Step 3</u> Define the video recording period by drawing or editing. By default, it is active all the time.
 - Define the period by drawing.
 - 1) Select the check box of event type. See Figure 5-28.



- 2) Define a period. The system supports maximum six periods.

icon switches to 📟. You can define the period for the selected days

simultaneously.

3) On the timeline, drag to define a period. The Device starts recoding the selected event type in the defined period. See Figure 5-29.



Figure 5-29

 Recording priority in case of event types are overlapped: MD&Alarm > Alarm > Intel > MD > General.

- Select the check box of event type, and then click for the defined period.
- When selecting MD&Alarm, the MD and Alarm check boxes will be cleared respectively.
- Define the period by editing. Take Sunday as an example.
- 1) Click

The **Period** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-30.

Period									
Current Dat	e: Sunda	ау							
Period 1	00:00	- 24:00	🖌 General	D MD	Alarm	MD&Alarm	Intel	D POS	
Period 2	00:00	- 24:00	General	D MD	Alarm	MD&Alarm	Intel	DOS	
Period 3	00:00	- 24:00	General	D MD	Alarm	MD&Alarm	Intel	D POS	
Period 4	00:00	- 24:00	General	D MD	Alarm	MD&Alarm	Intel	POS	
Period 5	00:00	- 24:00	General	D MD	Alarm	MD&Alarm	Intel	POS	
Period 6	00:00	- 24:00	General	D MD	Alarm	MD&Alarm	Intel	DOS	
Сору									
🗌 All									
🖂 Sunday		Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	🗌 Thursda	ay 🗌 Friday	🗌 Satu	rday	
								Apply Cancel	

Figure 5-30

- 2) Enter the time frame for the period and select the event check box.
 - \diamond There are six periods for you to set for each day.
 - ♦ Under Copy, select All to apply the settings to all the days of a week, or select specific day(s) that you want to apply the settings to.
- 3) Click **Apply** to save the settings.
- <u>Step 4</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.
 - - Click **Copy** to copy the settings to other channels.
 - After configuring the recording schedule settings, you need to perform the following operations to start recording according to the defined schedule.
 - Enable the alarm event and configure the settings for the recording channel.
 For details, see "5.10 Alarm Events Settings."
 - You need to enable the recording function, see "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."

5.1.4.10 Configuring Snapshot Storage Schedule

You can configure the storage schedule for the snapshot such as channels to take snapshot, alarm settings, and the armed period.

You can also configure snapshot storage settings by selecting **Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot**.

<u>Step 1</u> After you have configured the video recording settings, on the **Record** interface, click **Next**.

Snapshot Channel 🛃 General Alarm MD MD&Alarm Intel 2 22 24 6 10 12 16 18 20 0 8 Sunday \$ Monday Tuesday Wednesday ۵ ۵ Saturday ä Default Сору Back Finished

The **SNAPSHOT** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-31.

Figure 5-31

Step 2 Configure the snapshot settings parameters. See Table 5-10.

Parameter	Description		
Channel	In the Channel list, select a channel to take a snapshot.		
Event type	Select the check box of the event type which includes General, MD,		
Event type	Alarm, MD&Alarm, Intel, and POS.		
	Define a period during which the configured snapshot setting is active.		
Period	For details about defining a period, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded		
	Video Storage Schedule."		
Сору	Click Copy to copy the settings to other channels.		

Table 5-10

Step 3 Click Finished.

A pop-up message is displayed.

Step 4 Click OK.

The live view screen is displayed. The setting up with startup wizard is completed. You can start using the Device.

5.2 Live View

After you logged in the Device, the live view is displayed. See Figure 5-32. The number of channels displayed depends on your model.

To enter the live view screen from other interfaces, click used on the top right of the screen.



Figure 5-32

5.2.1 Live View Screen

You can view the live video from the connected cameras through each channel on the screen.

- By default, the system time, channel name and channel number are displayed on each channel window. This setting can be configured by selecting Main Menu > CAMERA > OVERLAY.
- The figure in the bottom right corner represents channel number. If the channel position is changed or the channel name is modified, you can recognize the channel number by this figure and then perform the operations such as record query and playback.

For the icons displayed on each channel, see Table 5-11.

lcon	Function
	Indicates recording status. This icon displays when the video is being recorded.
*	This icon displays when the motion detection occurs in the scene.
?	This icon displays when the video loss is detected.
	This icon displays when the channel monitoring is locked.
	— • • • — • • •

Table 5-11

To switch the position of two channels, point to one of the two channels, and then drag the window to the other channel.

5.2.2 Live View Control bar

The live view control bar provides you access to perform the operations such as playback, zoom, real-time backup, manual snapshot, voice talk, adding remote devices, and streams switch.

When you move the pointer to the top middle position of a channel window, the live view control bar is displayed. See Figure 5-33 for analog channel and Figure 5-34 for digital channel.

If there is not operation for six seconds after the control bar is displayed, the control bar hides automatically.



Figure 5-33



Figure 5-34

No.	Function	No.	Function	No.	Function
1	Instant Play	4	Manual Snap	7	Camera Registration
2	Digital Zoom	5	Mute		
3	Real-time Backup	6	Audio Talk		
T 11 E 40					

Table 5-12

5.2.2.1 Instant Playback

You can play back the previous five minutes to sixty minutes of the recorded video.

By clicking **I**, the instant playback interface is displayed. The instant playback has the following features:

- Move the slider to choose the time you want to start playing.
- Play, pause and close playback.
- The information such as channel name and recording status icon are shielded during instant playback and will not display until exited.
- During playback, screen split layout switch is not allowed.
- To change the playback time, select **Main Menu > SYSTEM > GENERAL**, in the **Instant Play** box, enter the time you want to play back. See Figure 5-35.

🔅 🚓 SYSTEM				LIVE 🛛 🛓 💽 📲
> GENERAL	General	Date&Time	Holiday	
RS232	Device Name		XVR	
SECURITY			8	
SYSTEM MAINTAIN	Language		ENGLISH	
IMP/EXP	Video Standa	rd	PAL	
DEFAULT	Instant Play(Min.)	5	
UPGRADE	Auto Logout(Min.)	2	Monitor Channel(s) when logout
	IPC Time Sy			
	IPC Time Sy	nc Period (hour)	24	
	Navigation B	ar		
	Mouse Sensi	tivity		── ●── + 850
				Apply Back
				Арру Васк

Figure 5-35

5.2.2.2 Digital Zoom

You can enlarge a specific area of the image to view the details by either of the following two ways.

• Click 🖭, the icon switches to 🔍. Hold down the left mouse button to select the area

you want to enlarge. The area is enlarged after the left mouse button is released.

• Point to the center that you want to enlarge, rotate the wheel button to enlarge the area.

III NOTE

- For some models, when the image is enlarged in the first way described previously, the selected area is zoomed proportionally according to the window.
- When the image is in the enlarged status, you can drag the image toward any direction to view the other enlarged areas.
- Right-click on the enlarged image to return the original status.

5.2.2.3 Real-time Backup

You can record the video of any channel and save the clip into a USB storage device.

By clicking Link, the recording is started. To stop recording, click this icon again. The clip is automatically saved into the connected USB storage device.

5.2.2.4 Manual Snapshot

You can take one to five snapshots of the video and save into a USB storage device.

By clicking 1, you can take snapshots. The snapshots are automatically saved into the

connected USB storage device. You can view the snapshots on your PC.

To change the quantity of snapshots, select **Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot**, in the **Manual Snap** list, select the snapshot quantity.

5.2.2.5 Mute (Analog channel only)

You can mute the video sound by clicking . This function is supported in single-channel view.

5.2.2.6 White Light (Supported on camera with white light function)

Click I to manually control the camera to turn on the white light function.

5.2.2.7 Siren (Supported on camera with siren function)

to manually control the camera to generate alarm sound.

5.2.2.8 Bidirectional Talk (Digital channel only)

You can perform the voice interaction between the Device and the remote device to improve efficiency of emergency. This function is supported only when the remotely connected IPC device supports bidirectional talk.

- Click , the icon switches to , the bidirectional talk of the remote device is turned on. The bidirectional talk of other digital channels is disabled.
- Click W to cancel the bidirectional talk. The bidirectional talk of other digital channels is resumed.

5.2.2.9 Remote Devices (Digital channel only)

You can view the information of remote devices and add new remote devices to replace the current connected devices.

By clicking E, the Camera Registration interface is displayed. For details about adding the remote devices, see "5.6 Configuring Remote Devices."

5.2.3 Navigation Bar

You can access the functions to perform operations through the function icons on the navigation bar. For example, you can access Main Menu and switch window split mode. See Figure 5-36.

The navigation bar is disabled by default. It does not appear in the live view screen until it is enabled. To enable it, select **Main Menu > SYSTEM > GENERAL**, enable the Navigation Bar, and then click Apply.



Figure 5-36

Icon	Function
	Open Main Menu.
	Expand or condense the navigation bar.
	Select view layout.

Icon	Function
€ ∃	Go to the previous screen.
Ð	Go to the next screen.
t.]	Enable tour function. The icon switches to
-	Open the PTZ control panel. For details, see "5.4 Controlling PTZ Cameras."
8	Open the Color Setting interface. For details, see "5.2.6 Color Setting." NOTE
	This function is supported only in single-channel layout.
Q	Open the record search interface. For detail, see "5.9 Playing Back Video."
A	Open the EVENT interface to view the device alarm status. For details, see "5.20.3 Viewing Event Information."
9 *	Open the CHANNEL INFO interface to display the information of each channel.
97 4	Open the CAMERA REGISTRATION interface. For details, see "5.6.1 Adding Remote Devices."
	Open the NETWORK interface. For details, see "5.15.1 Configuring Network Settings."
	Open the HDD MANAGER interface. For details, see "5.18.3 Configuring HDD Manager."
	Open the USB MANAGER interface. For details about USB operations, see "5.14.2 Backing up Files", "5.20.2 Viewing Log Information", "5.19.4 Exporting and Importing System Settings", "5.19.6 Upgrading the Device."

Table 5-13

5.2.4 Shortcut Menu

You can quickly access some function interfaces such as main menu, record search, PTZ setting, color setting and select the view split mode.

Right-click on the live view screen, the shortcut menu is displayed. See Figure 5-37. For details about the functions of shortcut menu, see Table 5-14.

After you access any interface through shortcut menu, you can return to the previous screen by right-clicking on the current screen.

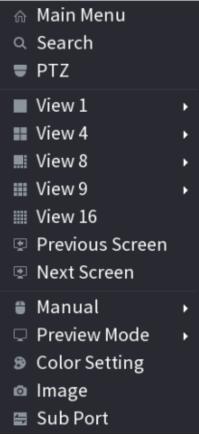


Figure 5-37

Function	Description				
Main Menu	Open Main Menu interface.				
Search	Open the PLAYBACK interface where you can search and play				
Search	back record files.				
PTZ	Open the PTZ interface.				
View Layout	Configure the live view screen as a single-channel layout or				
View Layout	multi-channel layout.				
Previous Screen	Click Previous Screen to go to the previous screen. For example, if				
Next Screen	you are using 4-split mode, the first screen is displaying the				
	channel 1-4, click Next screen , you can view channel 5-8.				
Camera Registration	Open the CAMERA REGISTRATION interface. For details, see				
	"5.6 Configuring Remote Devices."				
	• Select Record , you can configure the recording mode as				
Manual	Auto or Manual, or stop the recording. You can also enable or				
Wallua	disable snapshot function				
	• Select Alarm Out, you can configure alarm output settings.				
	• Select General , the layout of live view screen is as default.				
Preview Mode	• Select Show Face List, the detected face snapshots are				
	displayed in the bottom of the live view screen.				
	Point to the channel window and right-click on it to open the				
	shortcut menu, and then click Auto Focus.				
Auto Focus	NOTE NOTE				
	Not all cameras support this function.				

Function	Description
Color Setting	Open the COLOR interface where you can adjust the video image color.
Image	Click to modify the camera properties.
Sub Port	Click Sub Port,

Table 5-14

5.2.5 AI Preview Mode

You can view the detected faces snapshots and comparison results of detected faces and the faces in the library, and play back the recorded picture file.

To display the AI preview mode, the face detection function must be enabled. For details, see "5.11.1 Face Detection."

Right-click on the live view screen to display the shortcut menu, and then select **Preview Mode > AI Mode**, the AI preview mode interface is displayed. See Figure 5-38.

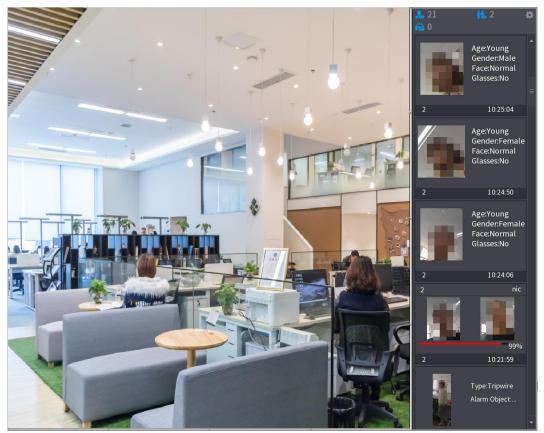


Figure 5-38

- 21: Indicates the quantity of detected faces from 0 A.M. to midnight.
- Indicates the quantity of detected persons 0 A.M. to midnight.
- Indicates the quantity of detected vehicles 0 A.M. to midnight.
- Click this icon and then select the face attributes that you want to display on the AI preview mode. Maximum four attributes are supported to display. See Figure 5-39.

Properties					
Show Fac					
A1 A1	ttribute: ttribute: ttribute: ttributa: stranger		Attribute: Attribute: Attribute: Attribute:	2	Similarity%
Channel	Time	Channel	Time	Channel	Time
Select attribu	utes to displ Gender	ay Max.se Face	et 4 attri Glasses	Beard	Mask
				ОК	Cancel
			e 5-39		

Figure 5-39

5.2.6 Color Setting

You can adjust the video image color effect such as sharpness, brightness, and contrast. The parameters are different according to the connected camera type. Take analog channel as an example.

In the live view screen, right-click on the analog channel to see the shortcut menu, and then select **Color Setting**, the **COLOR** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-40.

For details, see "5.5.1 Configuring Image Settings."

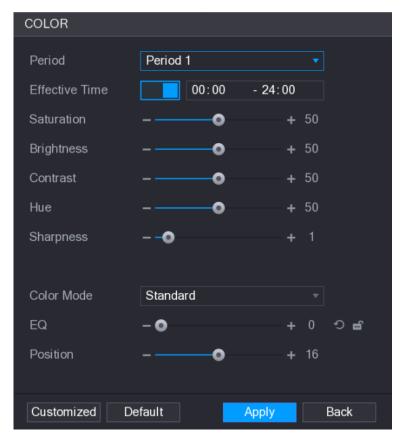


Figure 5-40

Parameter	Description					
Period	Divide 24 hours into two periods and configure the corresponding					
T enou	color settings.					
Effective Time	Enable the function and then set the effective time for each period.					
	Adjust the sharpness of image edge. The bigger the value is, the					
Sharpness	more obvious the image edge, and the noise is also greater.					
	The value ranges from 1 to 15. The default value is 1.					
Hue	Adjust the hue of image. The value ranges from 0 to 100. The					
пие	default value is 50.					
	Adjust the image brightness. The value ranges from 0 to 100. The					
	default value is 50.					
	The bigger the value is, the brighter the image will become. You					
Brightness	can adjust this value when the image as a whole looks dark or					
	bright. However, the image is likely to become dim if the value is					
	too big.					
	The recommended range is between 40 and 60.					
	Adjust the image contrast. The bigger the value is, the more					
	obvious the contrast between the light area and dark area will					
	become. You can adjust this value when the contrast is not					
Contrast	obvious. However, if the value is too big, the dark area is likely to					
Contrast	become darker and the light area over exposed. If the value is too					
	small, the image is likely to become dim.					
	The value ranges from 0 to 100. The default value is 50. The					
	recommended range is between 40 and 60.					

Parameter	Description			
Saturation	 Adjust the color shades. The bigger the value, the lighter the color will become. This value does not influence the general image lightness. The value ranges from 0 to 100. The default value is 50. The recommended range is between 40 and 60. 			
Color Mode	In the Color Mode list, you can select Standard, Soft, Bright, Colorful, Bank, Customized 1, Customized 2, Customized 3, and Customized 4. The sharpness, hue, brightness, contrast and saturation will adjust automatically according to the selected color mode.			
EQ	 Enhance the image effect. Adjust the effect value. Click , image is adjusted to the optimized effect automatically. Click , the current effect setting will be locked. NOTE Only HD analog channel supports this function. 			
Position	Adjust the display position of the image in the channel window. The value indicates pixel. The default value is 16.			
Customized	 You can customize four color modes. 1. Click Customized. The Customized Color interface is displayed. 2. In the Color Mode list, select Customized 1, for example. Then configure the settings for sharpness, hue, brightness, contrast and saturation. If you select All, the configuration of applies to all four customized color modes. 3. Click OK. 4. On the COLOR interface, in the Color Mode list, you can select the customized color mode. 			

Table 5-15

5.2.7 Live View Display

5.2.7.1 Configuring Display Settings

You can configure the display effect such as displaying time title and channel title, adjusting image transparency, and selecting the resolution.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > DISPLAY > Display.

The **DISPLAY** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-41.

📃 DISPLAY				
> DISPLAY	Main Screen		Extra Screen	
VIEW				
TOUR	Out Port	VGA/HDMI1/HDMI2	Enable	
ZERO-CHANNEL		Time Display	Out Port VGA/HD	
		Channel Title	Resolution 1280x72	
		Original Rate		
		IVS Rule Preview		
	V	Live Audio		
	Live Audio Volume	•		
	Transparency	- •	+ 0%	
	Resolution	1280x1024		
	Preview Mode	Al Mode		
				Apply Back

Figure 5-41

Step 2	Configure	the settings fo	r the display	narameters	See Table 5-16.
	Connigure	the settings to	i the display	parameters.	

Parameter		Description			
	Out Port	Indicates the main screen port.			
		Select the Time Title check box, the current system time			
	Time Title	displays in each channel window in live view screen. To hide			
		the time, clear the check box.			
		Select the Channel Title check box, the channel name,			
	Channel Title	channel number and recording status display in each channel			
		window in live view screen. To hide the time, clear the check			
		box.			
	Original Rate	Select the Original Rate check box, the video image displays			
		in its actual size in the channel window.			
Main	IVS Rule	Select the IVS Rule Preview check box to enable IVS rule			
Screen	Preview	preview function.			
	Live Audio	Select the Live Audio check box to enable the audio			
		adjustment function in the channel window on the live view			
	Live Audio	screen.			
	Volume	Move the slider to adjust the volume of live audio.			
	Transparency	Configure the transparency of the graphical user interface			
		(GUI). The higher the value, the more transparent the GUI			
		becomes.			
		Select resolution for the video. The default resolution for VGA			
	Resolution	port and HDMI port is 1280×1024.			
		D NOTE			

Parameter		Description			
		Some of the resolution options might not be supported on the			
		HDMI port.			
		General: No information is displayed on the channel			
	Preview Mode	window.			
		Al Mode: Displays the detected face snapshots.			
		NOTE NOTE			
		Not all models support this function.			
		Enable extra screen function. After this function is enabled,			
	Enable	you can select which port as extra screen port, and the other			
		port automatically becomes the main screen port.			
	Out Port	Select the VGA port or HDMI port as the port connected by a			
		secondary monitor. For example, if you select HDMI port as			
Extra		the extra screen port, the VGA port automatically becomes			
Screen		the main screen port.			
	Resolution	Select resolution for the video. The default resolution for VGA			
		port and HDMI port is 1280×720.			
		D NOTE			
		Some of the resolution options might not be supported on the			
		HDMI port.			
NOTE NOTE					
• The main menu does r		not display on the extra screen.			
If you do not enable th		he extra screen function, both the VGA port and HDMI port			
display the same image.					
	Table 5-16				

5.2.7.2 Configuring Viewing Layout

You can configure the view layout in the live view screen.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > DISPLAY > VIEW.

The View Setting interface is displayed. See Figure 5-42.

💻 DISPLAY				
DISPLAY	View Setting			
> VIEW				
TOUR				
ZERO-CHANNEL	1 •	2 -	3 -	4 -
TV ADJUST				
	5 -	6 💌	7 🔹	8 🔻
	9 -	10 -	11 🔻	12 -
	13 -	14 -	15 👻	16 👻
	13 -	14 -	15 👻	16 -
	25			
				Apply Back



<u>Step 2</u> Configure the view layout by clicking the layout buttons on the bottom. See Figure 5-43.



Figure 5-43

For example, click and select **9-16**, the view layout changes immediately, see Figure 5-44.

	💻 DISPLAY				
	DISPLAY	View Setting			
>	VIEW				
	TOUR				
	ZERO-CHANNEL				10 💌
	TV ADJUST				
			9 👻		11 *
					12 🔻
		16 🔻	15 -	14 💌	13 -
		11 11 111 125			
					Apply
					Apply Back



<u>Step 3</u> Adjust the position of channels if needed.

In the channel list, for example, in the channel 9 list, you can select 10, and then the channel 9 and channel 10 exchange positions.

<u>Step 4</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings. The live view screen displays the same layout as configured in this section.

5.2.7.3 Configuring Zero-Channel Settings

You can view several video sources on one channel on the web end.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > DISPLAY > ZERO-CHANNEL.

The **ZERO-CHANNEL** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-45.

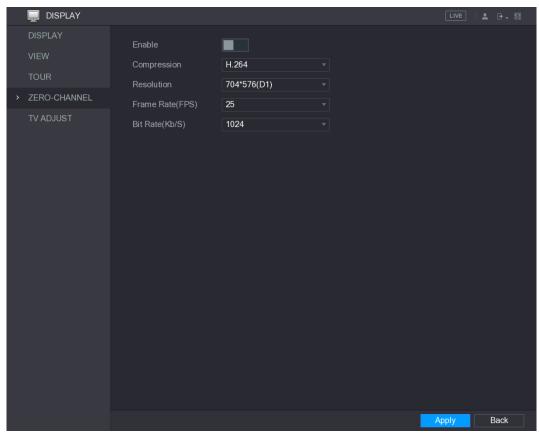


Figure 5-45

Step 2 Configure the settings for the zero-channel parameters. See Table 5-17.

Parameter	Description		
Enable	Enable zero-channel function.		
Compression	In the Compression list, select the video compression standard		
Compression	according to the device capability. The default is H.265.		
Resolution	In the Resolution list, select the video resolution. The default is		
Resolution	704×576 (D1).		
Frame Rate	Select a value between 1 and 25 for PAL standard, and between 1		
	and 30 for NTSC standard. The actual arrange is decided and		
(FPS)	selected dependent on the Device capability.		
Rit Poto (Kh/S)	The default value is 1024Kb/S. The actual arrange is decided and		
	selected dependent on the Device capability and frame rate.		
Bit Rate (Kb/S)	The default value is 1024Kb/S. The actual arrange is decided and		

Table 5-17

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to save the settings.

5.2.7.4 Configuring TV



Not all models support this function.

You can adjust the border margins in top, bottom, left and right directions as well as the brightness of the monitor connected to the Video out port of the Device.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > DISPLAY > TV ADJUST.

The **TV ADJUST** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-46.

💻 DISPLAY				
DISPLAY VIEW TOUR ZERO-CHANNEL	Top Margin Bottom Margin Left Margin Right Margin	- 0 - 0	+ 0 + 0 + 0	
> TV ADJUST	Brightness	•	+ 128	
	Default			Apply Back

Figure 5-46

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the parameters according to your actual situation.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

5.2.8 Configuring Tour Settings

You can configure a tour of selected channels to repeat playing videos. The videos display in turn according to the channel group configured in tour settings. The system displays one channel group for a certain period and then automatically changes to the next channel group. Step 1 Select **Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR**.

The **TOUR** interface is displayed. There are Main Screen tab and Extra Screen tab, see Figure 5-47 and Figure 5-48.

DISPLAY Main Screen VIEW Enable Enable Interval(Sec.) ZERO-CHANNEL Video Detect TV ADJUST Alarm View 1 View 1 Interval(Sec.) Image: Streen TV ADJUST Alarm Image: Streen View 1 Image: Streen View 1 Image: Streen Image: Streen Image: Streen View 1 Image: Streen View 1 Image: Streen View 1 Image: Streen Image: Streen Image: Streen Image:	
Enable Interval(Sec.) ZERO-CHANNEL Video Detect TV ADJUST Alarm View 1 Window Split 16 2 2 2	
> TOUR Interval(Sec.) ZERO-CHANNEL Video Detect TV ADJUST Alarm Window Split View 1 16 ✓ 1 ✓ 2 ✓	
ZERO-CHANNEL Video Detect View 1 TV ADJUST Alarm View 1 Window Split View 1 • 16 Channel Group • 1 1 • 2 2 •	
Window Split View 1 16 ✓ 1 2 2	
16 ✓ Channel Group 1 ✓ 2 ✓	
16 ✓ Channel Group 1 ✓ 2 ✓	
1 √ 1 2 √ 2	
2 🗸 2	
10 🗸 10	
11 ⊽11	
Add Modify Delete Move up Move down	
Apply Back	



📮 DISPLAY		
DISPLAY	Main Screen	Extra Screen
VIEW	Enable	
> TOUR	Interval(Sec.)	5
ZERO-CHANNEL	Window Split	View 1
TV ADJUST		
	10 🗸	Channel Group
	1 √ 1 2 √ 2	
	10 🗸 10	
		I I •
	Add	Modify Delete Move up Move down
		Apply Back

Figure 5-48

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the tour parameters for both Main Screen and Extra Screen. See Table 5-18.

Parameter	Description		
Enable	Enable tour function.		
Interval (Sec.)	Enter the amount of time that you want each channel group displays on the screen. The value ranges from 5 seconds to 120 seconds, and the default value is 5 seconds.		
Video Detect, Alarm	Select the View 1 or View 8 for Motion Detect tour and Alarm Tour (system alarm events).		
Window Split	In the Window Split list, select View 1 , View 4 , View 8 , or other modes that are supported by the Device.		
Channel Group	 Display all channel groups under the current Window Split setting. Add a channel group: Click Add, in the pop-up Add Group channel, select the channels to form a group, and then click Save. Delete a channel group: Select the check box of any channel group, and then click Delete. Edit a channel group: Select the check box of any channel group and then click Modify, or double-click on the group. The Modify Channel Group dialog box is displayed. You can regroup the channels. Click Move up or Move down to adjust the position of channel group. 		

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to save the settings.

- On the top right of the live view screen, use the left mouse button or press Shift to switch between (image switching is allowed) and (image switching is not allowed) to turn on/off the tour function.
- On the navigation bar, click Level to enable the tour and click Level to disable it.

Adding a Channel Group

Step 1 Click Add.

The Add Group interface is displayed. See Figure 5-49.

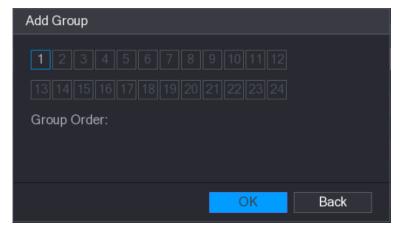


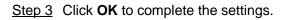
Figure 5-49

<u>Step 2</u> Select the channels that you want to group for tour. See Figure 5-50.

If you want to select more than one channel, in the **Window Split** list, do not select **View 1**.

Add Group	
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12	
13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 Group Order:	
5,6,7,8	
ОК	Back

Figure 5-50



Modifying a Channel Group

Double-click on a channel group, the **Modify Channel Group** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-51.

You can modify channel group and click **OK** to complete the settings.

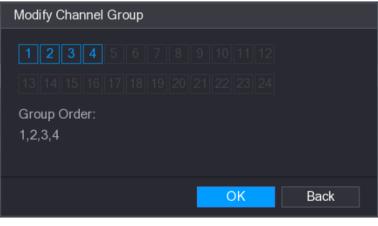


Figure 5-51

5.3 Entering Main Menu

Right-click on the live view screen, the shortcut menu is displayed, Click Main Menu and then login the system. The Main Menu is displayed, see Figure 5-52.

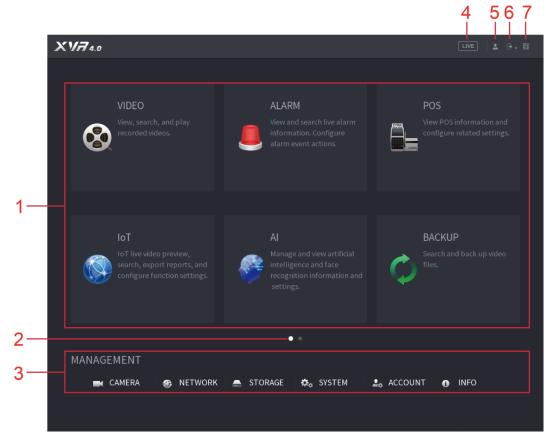


Figure 5-52

No.	lcon	Description			
1	Function tiles	 Includes eight function tiles: VIDEO, ALARM, POS, IoT, AI, BACKUP, DISPLAY, and AUDIO. Click each tile to open the configuration interface of the tile. VIDEO: Search for and play back the recorded video saved on the Device. ALARM: Search for alarm information and configure alarm event actions. POS: You can connect the Device to the POS (Point of Sale) machine and receive the information from it. IoT: View, search and export the temperature and humidity data of camera, connect sensors and wireless siren, and configure the alarm event linkage settings. AI: Configure face detection, face recognition, and IVS functions. BACKUP: Search and back up the video files to the external storage device such as USB storage device. DISPLAY: Configure the display effect such as displaying content, image transparency, and resolution, and enable the zero-channel function. AUDIO: Manage audio files and configure the playing schedule. The audio file can be played in response to an alarm event if the voice prompts function is enabled. 			
2	Switch icon	Indicates the current page of main menu. Click to switch to the next page.			
3	Configura tion menu	Includes six configurations through which you can configure camera settings, network settings, storage settings, system settings, account settings, and view information.			
4	Live	Click to go to the live view screen.			
5	.	When you point to . , the current user account is displayed.			
6	₽.	Click , select Logout, Reboot, or Shutdown according to your actual situation.			
7	₽ Q ⊡Æ	 Displays Cell Phone Client and Device SN QR Code. Cell Phone Client: Use your mobile phone to scan the QR code to add the device into the Cell Phone Client, and then you can start accessing the Device from your cell phone. Device SN: Obtain the Device SN by scanning the QR code. Go to the P2P management platform and add the Device SN into the platform. Then you can access and manage the device in the WAN. For details, refer to the P2P operation manual. You can also configure P2P function in the local configurations. See "5.1.4.5 Configuring P2P Settings." 			

5.4 Controlling PTZ Cameras

PTZ is a mechanical platform that carries a camera and a protective cover and performs overall control remotely. A PTZ can move in both horizontal and vertical direction to provide all-around view to the camera.

Before operating PTZ, ensure the network connection between PTZ and the Device.

5.4.1 Configuring PTZ Connection Settings

You need to configure the PTZ connection settings before use.

- Local connection: RS-485 Port for connecting Speed Dome or coaxial cable for connecting coaxial camera.
- Remote connection: local area network.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > CAMERA > PTZ.

The PTZ interface is displayed. See Figure 5-53.

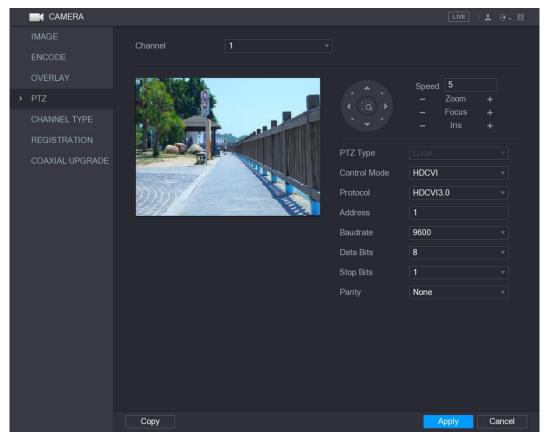


Figure 5-53

Step 2 Configure the settings for the PTZ connection parameters. See Table 5-20.

Parameter	Description			
Channel	In the Channel list, select the channel that you want to connect the PTZ			
Channel	camera to.			
	Local: Connect through RS-485 port or coaxial cable.			
PTZ Type	Remote: Connect through network by adding IP address of PTZ			
	camera to the Device.			

Parameter	Description	
	In the Control Mode list, select Serial or HDCVI. For HDCVI series	
Control Mode	product, select HDCVI. The control signal is sent to the PTZ through the	
Control Mode	coaxial cable. For the serial mode, the control signal is sent to the PTZ	
	through the RS-485 port.	
Protocol	In the Protocol list, select the protocol for the PTZ camera, for example,	
Protocol	select HDCVI3.0.	
	In the Address box, enter the address for PTZ camera. The default is 1.	
	NOTE NOTE	
Address	The entered address must be the same with the address configured on	
	the PTZ camera; otherwise the PTZ camera cannot be controlled from	
	the Device.	
Baudrate	In the Baudrate list, select the baudrate for the PTZ camera. The default	
Dauurale	is 9600.	
Data Bits	The default is 8.	
Stop Bits	The default is 1.	
Parity	The default is NONE.	

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to save the settings.

NOTE

Click **Copy** to copy the settings to other channels.

5.4.2 Working with PTZ Control Panel

PTZ control panel performs the operations such as directing camera in eight directions, adjusting zoom, focus and iris settings, and quick positioning.

Basic PTZ Control Panel

Right-click on the live view screen and then select **PTZ**. The PTZ control panel is displayed. See Figure 5-54.

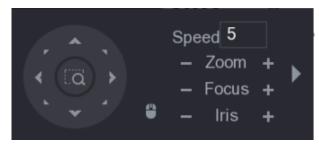


Figure 5-54



The functions with buttons in gray are not supported by the system.

Parameter	Description		
Speed	Controls the movement speed. The bigger the value is, the faster the		
	movement will be.		

Parameter	Description			
Zoom	Zoom out.			
	E Zoom in.			
Focus	E Focus far.			
	E Focus near.			
Iris	E: Image darker.			
	: Image brighter.			
PTZ movement	Supports eight directions.			
Ĩā	 Fast positioning button. Positioning: Click content the fast positioning screen, and then click anywhere on the live view screen, the PTZ will turn to this point and move it to the middle of the screen. Zooming: On the fast positioning screen, drag to draw a square on the view. The square supports zooming. Dragging upward is to zoom out, and dragging downward is to zoom in. The smaller the square, the larger the zoom effect. NOTE Not all models support this function and can only be controlled through mouse operations. 			
•	Click , you can control the four directions (left, right, up, and down) PTZ movement through mouse operation.			
►	Click to open the expanded PTZ control panel.			

Expanded PTZ Control Panel

On the basic PTZ control panel, click to open the expanded PTZ control panel to find more options. See Figure 5-55.

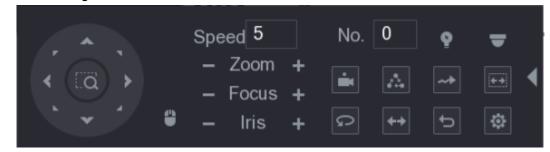


Figure 5-55

🛄 NOTE

- The functions with buttons in gray are not supported by the system.
- Right-click once to return to the interface of PTZ basic control panel.

Icon	Function	lcon	Function
•	Preset	Q	Auto Pan
9.44 6	Tour	+ +	Flip
*	Pattern	Ĵ	Reset
(+-+)	Autoscan	•	Click the AUX Config icon to open the PTZ functions settings interface.
Ŷ	AUX Switch	F	Click the Enter Menu icon to open the MENU OPERATION interface.

Table 5-22

5.4.3 Configuring PTZ Functions

5.4.3.1 Configuring Presets

Step 1 On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, click



The **Preset** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-56.

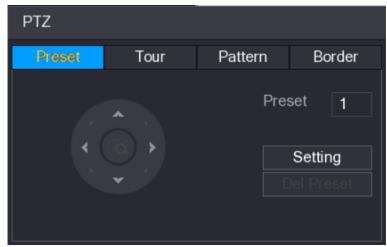


Figure 5-56

- <u>Step 2</u> Click the direction arrows to the required position.
- <u>Step 3</u> In the **Preset** box, enter the value to represent the required position.
- <u>Step 4</u> Click **Setting** to complete the preset settings.

5.4.3.2 Configuring Tours

Step 1 On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, click

The **PTZ** interface is displayed.

Step 2 Click the **Tour** tab.

The **Tour** tab is displayed. See Figure 5-57.

PTZ					
Preset	Tour	Pattern	Border		
*			eset 1 atrol No. 0 Add Preset Del Preset Del Tour		



- <u>Step 3</u> In the **Patrol No**. box, enter the value for the tour route.
- <u>Step 4</u> In the **Preset** box, enter the preset value.
- Step 5 Click Add Preset.

A preset will be added for this tour.

- You can repeat adding more presets.
- Click **Del Preset** to delete the preset for this tour. This operation can be repeated to delete more presets. Some protocols do not support deleting.

5.4.3.3 Configuring Patterns

Step 1 On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, click

The **PTZ** interface is displayed.

Step 2 Click the **Pattern** tab.

The **Pattern** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-58.

PTZ			
Preset	Tour	Pattern	Border
		Pa	ttern 1
4			Start
	Y		End



Step 3 In the Pattern box, enter the value for pattern.

- <u>Step 4</u> Click **Start** to perform the directions operations. You can also go to the PTZ Control Panel to perform the operations of adjusting zoom, focus, iris, and directions.
- <u>Step 5</u> On the **PTZ** interface, click **End** to complete the settings.

5.4.3.4 Configuring AutoScan

Step 1 On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, click

The **PTZ** interface is displayed.

Step 2 Click the Border tab.

The **Border** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-59.

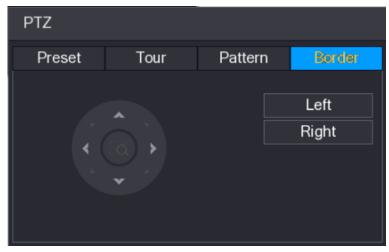


Figure 5-59

<u>Step 3</u> Click the direction arrows to position the left and right borders.

5.4.4 Calling PTZ Functions

After you have configured the PTZ settings, you can call the PTZ functions for monitoring from the Expanded PTZ Control Panel. See Figure 5-60.

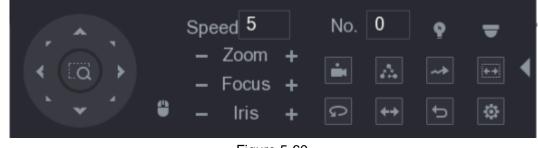


Figure 5-60

5.4.4.1 Calling Presets

<u>Step 1</u> On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, in the **No.** box, enter the value of the preset that you want to call.

Step 2 Click is to call the preset.

Step 3 Click again to stop calling the preset.

5.4.4.2 Calling Tours

<u>Step 1</u> On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, in the **No.** box, enter the value of the tour that you want to call.

Step 2 Click to call the tour.

Step 3 Click again to stop calling the tour.

5.4.4.3 Calling Patterns

<u>Step 1</u> On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, in the **No.** box, enter the value of the pattern that you want to call.

Step 2 Call to call the pattern.

The PTZ camera moves according to the configured pattern repeatedly.

Step 3 Click again to stop calling the pattern.

5.4.4.4 Calling AutoScan

- <u>Step 1</u> On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, in the **No.** box, enter the value of the border that you want to call.
- Step 2 Click

The PTZ camera performs scanning according to the configured borders.

Step 3 Click again to stop auto scanning.

5.4.4.5 Calling AutoPan

Step 1 On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, click E to start moving in horizontal direction.

Step 2 Click again to stop moving.

5.4.4.6 Using AUX Button

On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, click
, the AUX setting interface is displayed. See Figure 5-61.

- In the **Direct Aux** list, select the option that corresponds to the applied protocol.
- In the **Aux Num** box, enter the number that corresponds to the AUX switch on the decoder.

AUX			
Direct Aux			
NONE	On	Off	
Aux Num			
1	On	Off	

Figure 5-61

5.4.5 Calling OSD Menu

For the coaxial camera, you can call the OSD menu through the Expanded PTZ Control Panel. See Figure 5-60.

Step 1 On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, click

The MENU OPERATION interface is displayed. See Figure 5-62.

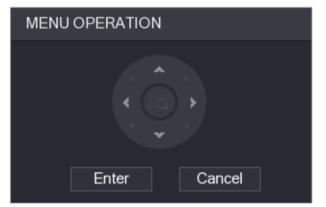


Figure 5-62

Step 2 Click Enter.

The OSD menu is displayed. See Figure 5-63.



Figure 5-63

- <u>Step 3</u> On the **MENU OPERATION** interface, click the arrow button to select the onscreen parameters.
- <u>Step 4</u> Click **Enter** to complete the settings.

5.5 Configuring Camera Settings

5.5.1 Configuring Image Settings

You can configure the image settings such as saturation, contrast, brightness, sharpness for each connected camera.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > CAMERA > IMAGE.

The **IMAGE** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-64 for analog channel and Figure 5-65 for digital channel.

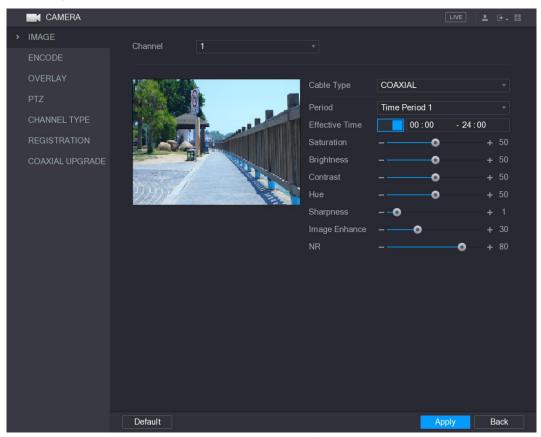


Figure 5-64

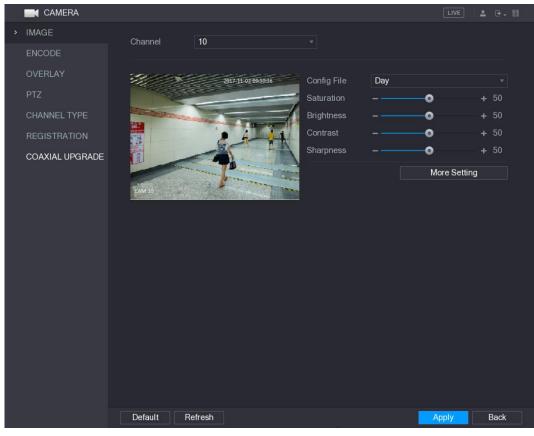


Figure 5-65

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the image parameters. See Table 5-23.

On the digital channel interface, click **More Setting** to display more parameters.

Parameter	Description		
Channel	In the Channel list, select the channel that you want to configure.		
	In the Cable Type list, select the cable type that the camera uses.		
Cable Type	NOTE NOTE		
	Not all models support this function.		
Period	In the Period list, select a time period for the image settings. The		
Fellou	image settings will be only used during the selected period.		
	Enable the effective function.		
Effective Time	In the Effective Time box, enter the start time and end time for the		
	period you selected.		
	Adjusts the color shades. The bigger the value, the lighter the color		
Saturation	will become. This value does not influence the general image		
	lightness.		
	The value ranges from 0 to 100. The default value is 50. The		
	recommended range is between 40 and 60.		

Parameter	Description
	Adjusts the image contrast. The bigger the value is, the more obvious
	the contrast between the light area and dark area will become. You
	can adjust this value when the contrast is not obvious. However, if the
Contract	value is too big, the dark area is likely to become darker and the light
Contrast	area over exposed. If the value is too small, the image is likely to
	become dim.
	The value ranges from 0 to 100. The default value is 50. The
	recommended range is between 40 and 60.
	Adjusts the image brightness. The bigger the value is, the brighter the
	image will become. You can adjust this value when the image as a
Brightnoss	whole looks dark or bright. However, the image is likely to become dim
Brightness	if the value is too big.
	The value ranges from 0 to 100. The default value is 50. The
	recommended range is between 40 and 60.
Hue	Adjusts the hue of image. The value ranges from 0 to 100. The default
пие	value is 50.
	Adjusts the sharpness of image edge. The bigger the value is, the
Sharpness	more obvious the image edge, and the noise is also greater.
	The value ranges from 1 to 15. The default value is 1.
Image Enhance	Adjusts the image definition. The bigger the value is, the clearer the
	image will become, but there will be more noises.
NR	Reduces the noises from image. The bigger the value is, the better
	the image will become.
	In the Config File list, select Day, Night, Normal, or Switch By
	Period . The system configures the parameters correspondingly.
	Day: Apply the configuration during daytime.
Config File	Night: Apply the configuration during nighttime.
	Normal: Apply the configuration during day and night.
	• Switch by Period: If you select this option, you need to configure
	the sunrise time and sunset time where you are located.
Mirror	Enable the function, the left and right side of the video image will be
	switched. It is disabled by default.
	This function specially applies to the image which frame rate is
3D Denoise	configured as 2 at least. It reduces the noises by making use of the
	information between two frames. The bigger the value is, the better
	the effect.
Flip	In the Flip list, you can select 180 ° to change the video image display.
	By default, the setting is No Flip .
Light	In the Light list, select Close or Enable to use the backlight
	compensation or not.

Parameter	Description		
Configure the white balance to adjust the general hue of the in The default setting is Auto. • Auto: Automatically apply white balance to different colors make the image color display normally. • Sunny: Apply the threshold value to sunny environment. • Night: Apply the threshold value to night. • Customized: Manually adjust the Red Gain and Blue Gair			
Day & Night	 Configure the color and black&white mode of the image. This setting is not affected by the configuration files. The default setting is Auto. Color: The camera outputs color image only. Auto: Depends on the camera, such as overall brightness and 		

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

5.5.2 Configuring Encode Settings

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Encode.

The **Encode** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-66.

	CAMERA				
	IMAGE	Encode Sn	apshot		
>	ENCODE	Channel	1 •		
	OVERLAY	Main Stream		Sub Stream	
	PTZ	Smart Codec		Video	
	CHANNEL TYPE	Туре	Regular 🔻	Туре	Sub Stream1 🔹
	REGISTRATION	Compression	H.265 ·	Compression	H.265 ·
	COAXIAL UPGRADE	Resolution	1920x1080(1080P)	Resolution	352*240(CIF) •
		Frame Rate(FPS)	15 🔹	Frame Rate(FPS)	15 💌
		Bit Rate Type	CBR 🔻	Bit Rate Type	CBR
		I Frame Interval	1S -	l Frame Interval	1S -
		Bit Rate(Kb/S)	2048 🔻	Bit Rate(Kb/S)	640 -
			More Setting		More Setting
		Default Copy			Apply Back

Figure 5-66

Parameter	Description		
Channel	In the Channel list, select the channel that you want to configure the		
Channel	settings for.		
	Enable the smart codec function. This function can reduce the video		
Smart Codec	bit stream for non-important recorded video to maximize the storage		
	space.		
	• Main Stream: In the Type list, select General, MD (Motion		
Туре	Detect), or Alarm .		
	Sub Stream: This setting is not configurable.		
	In the Compression list, select the encode mode.		
	• H.265: Main profile encoding. This setting is recommended.		
	H.264H: High profile encoding. Low bit stream with high		
Compression	definition.		
	H.264: General profile encoding.		
	• H.264B: Baseline profile encoding. This setting requires higher bit		
	stream compared with other settings for the same definition.		
	In the Resolution list, select resolution for the video.		
Resolution	The maximum video resolution might be different dependent on your		
	device model.		
	Configure the frames per second for the video. The higher the value,		
	the clearer and smoother the image will become. Frame rate changes		
Frame Rate	along with the resolution.		
(FPS)	Generally, in PAL format, you can select the value from 1 through 25;		
(110)	in NTSC format, you can select the value from 1 through 30. However,		
	the specific range of frame rate that you can select depends on the		
	capability of the Device.		
Quality	This function is available if you select VBR in the Bit Rate List.		
-	The higher the value, the better the image will become.		
I Frame Interval	The interval between two reference frames.		
	In the Bit Rate list, select a value or enter a customized value to		
Bit Rate (Kb/S)	change the image quality. The bigger the value is, the better the		
	image will become.		
Video	Enable the function for sub stream.		
	Click More Setting , the More Setting interface is displayed.		
Audio Encode	Audio Encode: This function is enabled by default for main		
	stream. You need to manually enable it for sub stream 1. Once		
	this function is enabled, the recorded video file is composite		
	audio and video stream.		
Audio Source	Audio Source: In the Audio Source list, you can select LOCAL		
	and HDCVI.		
	Substant Control C		
Audio Format	♦ HDCVI: The audio signal is input from HDCVI camera.		
	• Audio Format: In the Audio Forma t list, select a format that you		
	need.		

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

Click **Copy** to copy the settings to other channels.

5.5.3 Configuring Snapshot Settings

Step 1 Select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot.

The **Snapshot** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-67.

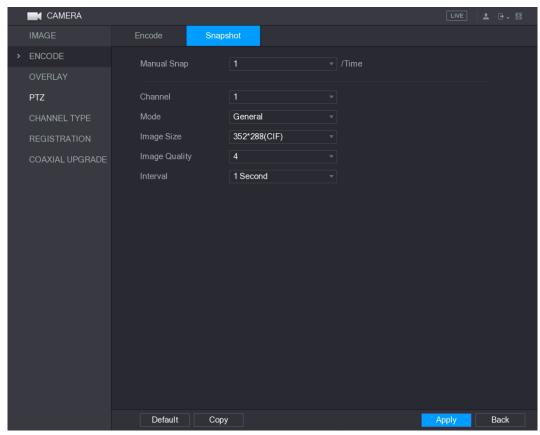


Figure 5-67

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the snapshot parameters. See Table 5-25.

Parameter	Description		
Manual Snap	In the Manual Snap list, select how many snapshots you want to take		
Manual Shap	each time.		
Channel	In the Channel list, select the channel that you want to configure the		
Channel	settings for.		
	In the Mode list, you can select General, Event, or Human Face as		
	the event type for which you want to take a snapshot.		
	• General : The snapshot is taken during the scheduled period.		
Mode	• Event : The snapshot is taken when there is an alarm event		
Mode	occurs, such as motion detection event, video loss, and local		
	alarms.		
	• Human Face: The snapshot is taken when the face is detected.		
	The face detection function is support only with the Channel 1.		
Image Size	In the Image Size list, select a value for the image. The bigger the		
inage Size	value is, the better the image will become.		

Parameter	Description	
Imaga Quality	Configures the image quality by 6 levels. The higher the level, the	
Image Quality	better the image will become.	
Interval	Configures or customizes the snapshot frequency. You can select 1	
	second per one snapshot to 7 seconds per one snapshot. The	
	maximum is 3600 seconds per one snapshot.	
Table 5-25		

Step 3 Click Apply to complete the settings.

Click Copy to copy the settings to other channels.

5.5.4 Configuring Overlay Settings

You can configure to display system time and channel name on each channel window in the live view screen.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > CAMERA > OVERLAY > Overlay.

The Overlay interface is displayed. See Figure 5-68.

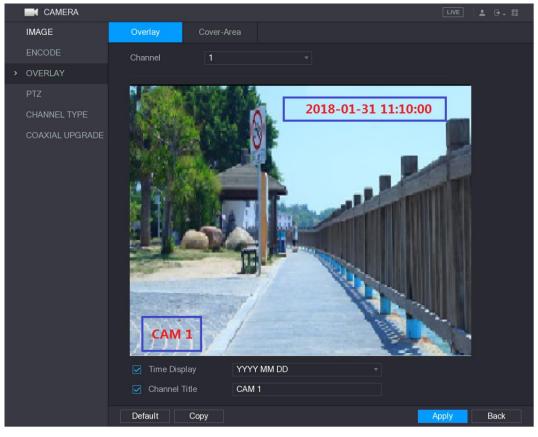


Figure 5-68

Step 2 Configure the settings for the text overlay parameters. See Table 5-26.

Parameter	Description
Channel	In the Channel list, select the channel that you want to configure the
	settings for.
Time Display	Select the Time Display check box to display the system time on
ППе Бізріау	each channel window in the live view screen.

Parameter	Description	
	In the Time Display list, select time display style.	
	Select the Channel Title check box to display the channel name on	
Channel Title	each channel window in the live view screen.	
	In the Channel Title box, enter the name for the selected channel.	
Table 5-26		

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

Click **Copy** to copy the settings to other channels.

5.5.5 Configuring Covered Area Settings

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > CAMERA > OVERLAY > Cover-Area.

The Cover-Area interface is displayed. See Figure 5-69.

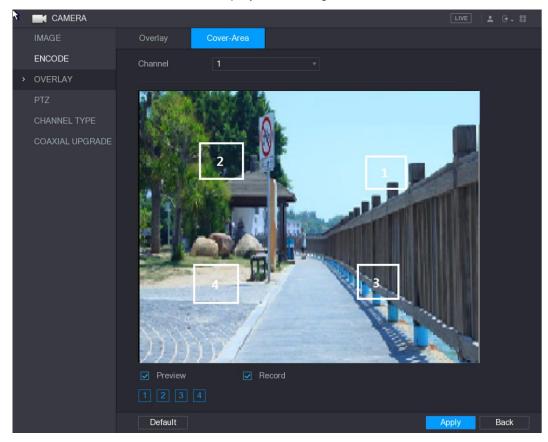


Figure 5-69

<u>Step 2</u>	Configure the settings	for the covered area	a parameters. See Table 5-27.
---------------	------------------------	----------------------	-------------------------------

Parameter	Description		
Channel	In the Channel list, select the channel that you want to configure the		
Channel	settings for.		
	• Preview: Select the Preview check box to apply the configured		
Preview	covered block to the selected channel window in the live view		
FIEVIEW	screen.		
	• Record: Select the Record check box to apply the configured		

Description
covered block to the selected channel window during recording.
To configure covering block, do the following:
1. Select the Preview check box or the Record check box, or select
the both. The "1, 2, 3, 4" buttons are activated.
2. Click the buttons to select blocks.
A triangle solid black block is displayed.
3. Drag the block to the area that you want to cover and adjust the
size of the block. You can configure total 4 covered blocks.

Step 3 Click Apply to complete the settings.

5.5.6 Configuring Channel Type

You can configure the channel type as Analog or IP channel.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > CAMERA > CHANNEL TYPE.

The CHANNEL TYPE interface is displayed. See Figure 5-70.

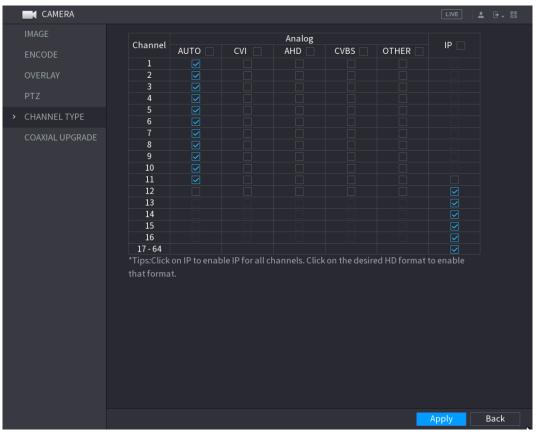


Figure 5-70

Step 2 Configure the channels.

- Analog Channel: Select the transmission medium such as CVI, CVBS, and then follow the onscreen instructions to complete the settings.
- IP Channel: You can enable the IP channels by disabling the corresponding analog channels. The Device also provides expanded IP channels for your use, such as the **17–64** channels in Figure 5-70.

- The 17–64 channels are only for IP camera and the range changes dependent on the model you purchased.
- The channel selection for analog camera or IP camera are in sequence, for example, if you want to select channels for IP camera, you need to select from the last channel number Channel **16** first, which means, you cannot jump to select the channel **15** directly until you have selected the channel **16**.
- <u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** and follow the onscreen instructions to complete the settings.

5.5.7 Upgrading Coaxial Camera

Step 1 Select Main Menu > CAMERA > COAXIAL UPGRADE.

The **COAXIAL UPGRADE** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-71.

CAMERA					LIVE 💄 🕞 🗸 🔡
IMAGE	Undete File				Browse
ENCODE	Update File				Browse
OVERLAY	Device(0/2)				
	20100(0/2)				
PTZ	Ch	annel	Process	System Version	Manufacturer
CHANNEL TYPE				V1.000.0003.1.R.201	Dahua
DEGISTRATION				V1.000.0002.3.R.201	Dahua
REGISTRATION					
COAXIAL UPGRADE					
					Start Upgrade

Figure 5-71

Step 2 Click Browse.

The Browse interface is displayed.

<u>Step 3</u> Select the upgrade file and then click **OK**.

The **COAXIAL UPGRADE** interface is displayed.

You need to insert the USB storage device that contains the upgrading files.

- <u>Step 4</u> Select the check box of the channel that you want to upgrade.
- <u>Step 5</u> Click **Start Upgrade**.

If the upgrading is successful, the system pops up a message indicating the upgrading is completed.

5.6 Configuring Remote Devices

5.6.1 Adding Remote Devices

This function is available after you have configured the channel type as IP channel as described in previous section, see "5.5.6 Configuring Channel Type."

You can add remote devices by adding the IP address.

Select Main Menu > CAMERA > REGISTRATION > Registration, the Registration interface is displayed. See Figure 5-72.

IMAGE Registration Status Firmware Upgrade ENCODE Uninitialized Initialize Show Filter IPC OVERLAY 0 Edit Preview Status IP Address Man PTZ CHANNEL TYPE I I I I I I I	
OVERLAY O Edit Preview Status IP Address Man	
0 Edit Preview Status IP Address Man PTZ	
CHANNEL TYPE	
> REGISTRATION	
COAXIAL UPGRADE	
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Device Search Add Manual Add	
Added Device	
Channel Edit Delete Status IP Address	
Delete Residue bandwidth/Total bandwidth: 49.50Mbps/49 Import Export	

Figure 5-72

Parameter	Description
Uninitialized	Enable the Uninitialized function, the uninitialized devices out of the
Uninitialized	searched devices are displayed in the searched device list.
Initialize	Select the uninitialized device from the uninitialized device list, and
minalize	the click Initialize to start initializing device.
	In the Show Filter list, select the remote device type that you want to
	display in the searched device list.
	None: Display all types of devices.
Show Filter	IPC: Display the front-end devices.
	• DVR: Display all storage devices such as NVR, DVR and HCVR.
	OTHER: Display the devices that do not belong to IPC or DVR
	type.

Parameter	Description
Searched Device	Displays the searched devices. You can view the device information
List	such as status, IP address.
	Click Device Search , the searched devices display in the searched device list.
	To adjust the display sequence, in the title line, you can click the IP
Davias Caarah	address, Manufacturer, Type, MAC Address, Port, or Device Name
Device Search	text. For example, click the IP address text, the sequence icon
	IP Address is displayed.
	D NOTE
	"*" is displayed next to the added device.
۸dd	In the Searched Device List area, select the device that you want to
Add	add.
	Add the device by manually configuring settings such as IP address,
Manual Add	channel selection. For details, see "5.6.1.3 Adding Remote Devices
	Manually."
Added Device	Displays the added devices. You can edit and delete the device, and
List	view the device information.
Delete	Select the check box of the added device, and then click Delete to
Delete	delete the added device.
Import	Select the searched devices and then click Import to import the
Import	devices in batches.
Export	Select the added devices and then click Export . The exported
Export	devices information is saved into the USB storage device.

5.6.1.1 Initializing Remote Devices

You can reset the password and IP address of the remote devices through initializing.

Step 1 Click Device Search.

The searched devices are displayed in the table. See Figure 5-73.

								LIVE	
IMAGE	Reg	istratio	n	Status		Firmware	Upgrade		
ENCODE		Uninitia	lized		Initialize		Show Filter		IPC -
OVERLAY						01-1-		A	
PTZ		50 1		Edit	Preview	Statu:		Address	Mar ▲ ≡
				i i				92.168.1.19	
CHANNEL TYPE				ï	LIVE			92. 1 68.1.31 92.168.1. 1 23	
REGISTRATION				ř				92.168.1.125	
COAXIAL UPGRADE				e I				92.168.1.151	
COANIAL OPGRADE				1				92.168.1.154	
	į	Device	Search					Add	Manual Add
		Added	Device						
		(Channel		Edit	Delete	Status	IP Addre	ess
		Del		Residue	bandwidth/	rotal bandwidth:	49.50Mbps/49	Import	Export



<u>Step 2</u> Enable the Initialized function.

The uninitialized devices are displayed. See Figure 5-74.

CAMERA						LIVE	
IMAGE	Registration	Status	Fi	rmware	Upgrade		
ENCODE	Uninitialized		Initialize	Ş	Show Filter		IPC -
OVERLAY		Edit				Address 🔺	
PTZ			Preview	Status ✓		168.1.108	Manu [.] Da
CHANNEL TYPE							
REGISTRATION							
COAXIAL UPGRADE							
	Device Search					Add	Manual Add
	Added Device						
	Channel		Edit	Delete	Status	IP Addr	ess
	Delete	Decidue	andwidth/Tat	al bandwidth: 6 ⁻	1 50Mbpc/61	Import	Export
		nesidue i			1.00141013/01	Import	Export

Figure 5-74

- <u>Step 3</u> Select the uninitialized device that you want to initialize.
- Step 4 Click Initialize.

The Enter Password interface is displayed. See Figure 5-75.

Enter Password		
	Using current device password and email info.	
		Next

Figure 5-75

<u>Step 5</u> Configure the password and email information.

D NOTE

If you select the **Using current device password and email info** check box, the remote device automatically uses the current password and email information, so you do not need to set the password and email address again and can go to Step 6.

1) Clear the **Using current device password and email info** check box.

The password setting interface is displayed. See Figure 5-76	3.
--	----

Enter Password	
Using current o	levice password and email info.
User	admin
Password	
	Use a password that has 8 to 32 characters, it can be a combination of letter(s), number(s) and symbol(s) with at least two kinds of them.(please do not use special symbols like ' " ; : &)
Confirm Password	
	Next

Figure 5-76

2) Configure the settings for the password setting parameters. See Table 5-29.

Parameter	Description
User	The default is admin.
Password	The new password can be set from 8 characters through 32 characters and contains at least two types from number, letter and

Parameter	Description
Confirm Password	special characters (excluding"'", """, ";", ":" and "&"). Please enter a strong password according to the password strength bar indication.

- 3) Click Next.
 - The **Password Protection** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-77.

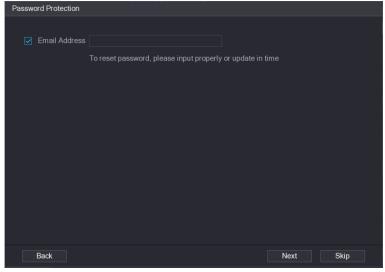


Figure 5-77

4) Select the **Email Address** box and enter the email address that you want to reserve for password reset in the future.

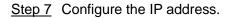
If you do not want to set the reserved email address, click Skip.

Step 6 Click Next.

The **NETWORK** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-78.

NETWORK			
Checked Device No.: 1			
STATIC			
IP Address	192 . 168 . 1 . 108	Incremental Value	1
Subnet Mask	255 _ 255 _ 255 _ 0		
Default Gateway	192 . 168 . 1 . 1		
1 IP Address			
1 192.168.1.10	8		
Back		Next S	kip

Figure 5-78



- Select the **DHCP** check box, you do not need to enter the IP address information, because the system will allocate one IP address to the remote device.
- Select the **STATIC** check box, you need to enter the IP address, subnet mast, default gateway, and incremental value. The system will allocate the IP address to the remote devices by progressively increasing the last part of the IP address when initializing devices in batches.

When configuring IP address for multiple remote devices which were not in the same network segment, these remote devices will belong to the same network segment after configuration.

Step 8 Click Next.

The initializing is started. After the process is completed, see Figure 5-79.

D	evice	Initialization			
	Device	Initialization Finishe	-d		
Į					
	1	IP Address	Serial No.	Results	
		192.168.1.108	000000000000000000000000000000000000000	Initialize:Succeed Modify IP:Succeed	
					Finished

Figure 5-79

<u>Step 9</u> Click **Finished** to complete the settings.

5.6.1.2 Adding Remote Devices Automatically

<u>Step 1</u> On the **Registration** interface, click **Device Search** The searched devices are displayed. See Figure 5-80.

CAMERA								LIVE	
IMAGE	Re	gistratio	n	Status		Firmware	Upgrade		
ENCODE		Uninitia	lized		Initialize		Show Filter		IPC -
OVERLAY									
PTZ		50 1		Edit	Preview	Statu:		P Address	Mar ▲ ≡
				<i>,</i>				92. 168.1 .19 92. 168 .1.31	
CHANNEL TYPE				1				.92.168.1.123	
REGISTRATION				, ¹				92.168.1.131	
COAXIAL UPGRADE							1	192.168.1.151	
				ï			1	92.168.1.154	
		Device Added I						Add	Manual Add
			Channel		Edit	Delete	Status	IP Addr	ress
				Residue	bandwidth/T	otal bandwidth:	49.50Mbps/49	Import	Export

Figure 5-80

- <u>Step 2</u> Select the check box of the device.
- Step 3 Click Add.

The device is added into the **Added Device** area.

- You can also double-click the device to add it into the Added Device area.
- You can add devices in batches.

5.6.1.3 Adding Remote Devices Manually

<u>Step 1</u> On the **Registration** interface, click **Manual Add**. The **Manual Add** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-81.

Manual Add	
Channel	21 🔹
Manufacturer	Onvif
IP Address	192.168.0.0
RTSP Port	554
HTTP Port	80
User Name	admin
Password	
Remote Channel	1
Decoder Buffer	Default 🔻
Encrypt	
● Auto ○ TCP ○	UDP 🔿 MULTICAST
	OK Back

Figure 5-81

Step 2 Configure the settings for the manual adding device parameters. See Table 5-30.

Parameter	Description		
Channel	In the Channel list, select the channel that you want use on the		
Channel	Device to connect the remote device.		
Manufacturer	In the Manufacturer list, select the manufacturer of the remote		
Manufacturer	device.		
	In the IP Address box, enter the IP address of remote device.		
IP Address	NOTE NOTE		
	The default is 192.168.0.0 which the system cannot connect to.		
RTSP Port	The default value setting is 554. You can enter the value according to		
KISF FOIL	your actual situation.		
	The default value setting is 80. You can enter the value according to		
HTTP Port	your actual situation.		
	If you enter other value, for example, 70, and then you should enter		
	70 after the IP address when logging in the Device by browser.		
User Name	Enter the user name of the remote device.		
Password	Enter the password of the user for the remote device.		
Remote Channel	Enter the remote channel number of the remote device that you want		
Remote Channel	to add.		
Decoder Buffer	In the Decoder Buffer list, select Default, Realtime, or Fluent.		
	• If the remote device is added through private protocol, the default		
Protocol Type	type is TCP .		
	• If the remote device is added through Onvif protocol, the system		

Parameter	Description
	supports Auto, TCP, UDP, or MULTICAST.
	• If the remote device is added through other manufacturers, the
	system supports TCP and UDP .
	If the remote device is added through Onvif protocol, selecting the
	Encrypt check box will provide encryption protection to the data being
En en mt	transmitted.
Encrypt	NOTE NOTE
	To use this function, the HTTPS function should be enabled for the
	remote IP camera.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to save the settings.

D NOTE

- Only one device can be added manually at one time.
- Indicates successful connection and I indicates connection failed.

5.6.1.4 Modifying or Deleting Remote Devices

You can modify and delete the added devices.

• To modify the remote devices, do the following:

Step 1 Click or double-click a device.

The Edit interface is displayed. See Figure 5-82.

Edit	
Channel	10 🔻
Manufacturer	Onvif 🔹
IP Address	192.168.1.123
RTSP Port	554
HTTP Port	80
User Name	admin
Password	•••••
Remote Channel	1
Decoder Buffer	Default -
● Auto ○ TCP ○	UDP 🔿 MULTICAST
Сору	OK Back

Figure 5-82

 $\underline{Step 2} \quad \text{In the Channel list, select the channel that you want to modify settings for.}$

<u>Step 3</u> Click **OK** to save the settings.

Click Copy to copy the user name and password to other channels.

- To delete one or more added devices, do the following: •
 - Click to delete one device. \diamond
 - Select the check box of the devices that you want to delete, and then click **Delete**. \Diamond

5.6.1.5 Modifying IP Address

You can modify a single IP address or multiple IP addresses of remote devices at one time.

To modify a single IP address, do the following:

Step 1 In the Searched Device list area, click for the device that you want to modify IP. The Modify IP interface is displayed. See Figure 5-83.

Modify IP	
IP Address	192 . 168 . 3 . 133
Subnet Mask	255 . 255 . 0 . 0
Default Gateway	192 . 168 . 0 . 1
User Name	admin
Password	
Add	
	OK Back

Figure 5-83

- Step 2 Configure the settings for IP address, subnet mask, default gateway, user name, and password.
- <u>Step 3</u> Enable the **Add** function to add the device into the **Added Device** area.
- Step 4 Click OK to save the settings.
- To modify IP address in batches, do the following:
- Step 1 In the Searched Device list area, select the devices that you want to modify IP address in batches.

Step 2 Click

The Modify IP interface is displayed. See Figure 5-84.

Modify IP	
Batch Modify	
Start Address	192 . 168 . 3 . 133
Subnet Mask	255 . 255 . 0 . 0
Default Gateway	192 .168 . 0 . 1
User Name	admin
Password	
Add	
	OK Back

Figure 5-84

- Step 3 Enable the Batch Modify function.
- <u>Step 4</u> Configure the settings for start IP address (the IP address is allocated in sequence), subnet mask, default gateway, user name, and password.
- <u>Step 5</u> Enable the **Add** function to add the devices into the **Added Device** area.
- <u>Step 6</u> Click **Apply** to save the settings.

5.6.1.6 Exporting IP Address

You can export the added IP address to the USB storage device.

The exported information is saved in .csv file, which includes IP address, port number, channel number, manufacturer, user name, and password.

<u>Step 1</u> Insert the USB storage device to the USB port of the Device.

Step 2 Click Export.

The Browse interface is displayed. See Figure 5-85.

Browse					
Device Name	sdb1(USB USB)	- Refresh	Format		
Total Space	28.63 GB				
Free Space	27.04 GB				
Address	7				
Name		Size	Туре	Delete	•
🗀 LOST.DIR			Folder	ā	
🗅 Android			Folder	莭	
🗅 err			Folder	ā	
1234567			Folder	莭	
D NVR			Folder	亩	
Screenshot_20)180523-133141.png	75.8 KB	File	Ē	-
File Backup Encrypti	ion				
New Folder			ОК	Back	

Figure 5-85

<u>Step 3</u> Configure the save path.

<u>Step 4</u> Click **OK** to save the settings.

A pop-up message indicating "Successfully exported" is displayed.

Step 5 Click OK.

When exporting IP address, the **File Backup Encryption** check box is selected by default. The file information includes IP address, port, channel number, manufacturer, user name, and password.

- If you select the File Backup Encryption check box, the file format is .backup.
- If you clear the **File Backup Encryption** check box, the file format is .csv. In this case, there might be a risk of data leakage.

5.6.1.7 Importing IP Address

You can add remote devices by importing IP address information.

<u>Step 1</u> Insert the USB storage device to the USB port of the Device.

Step 2 Click Import.

The Browse interface is displayed. See Figure 5-86.

Brow	se				
	Device Name	sda5(USB DISK)	 Refresh 		
	Total Space	15.60 GB			
	Free Space	15.60 GB			
	Address	1			
	Name		Size	Туре	Delete
	🖿 IP			Folder	茴
	RemoteConfig_20	171103141044.csv	464 B	File	亩
	Config File				
				ОК	Back

Figure 5-86

- Step 3 Select the file that you want to import.
- <u>Step 4</u> Click **OK** to start importing.

After importing is completed, a pop-up message indicating "The import succeeded" is displayed.

If the IP address that you want to import already exists in the Device, the system will pop up a message to ask you whether to overwrite the existing content.

- Click **OK** to replace the existing one.
- Click Cancel to add it as a separate device in the Added Device area.

- You can edit the exported .csv file and be cautious not to change the file format; otherwise the file cannot be imported as it will be judged as invalid.
- The language of .csv file must match the Device language.
- The import and export through customized protocol is not supported.

5.6.2 Managing Remote Devices

You can view the status of remote devices and upgrade.

5.6.2.1 Viewing Status

You can view the device information such as connection status, IP address, motion detection, video loss detection, camera name, and manufacturer.

Select **Main Menu > CAMERA > REGISTRATION > Status**, the **Status** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-87.

					[LIVE 💄 🕞 🗸	9 9
IMAGE	Registration	Status	Firmware	Upgrade			
ENCODE	Device Status	5					
OVERLAY	Channel	Status	IP Address	MD	Video Loss	Tampering	
PTZ	11		192.168.1.123				
CHANNEL TYPE							
REGISTRATION							
COAXIAL UPGRADE							
	Refresh						

Figure 5-87

5.6.2.2 Viewing Firmware Information

You can view the device firmware information such as channel number, IP address, manufacturer, system version, video input, audio input, and alarm in.

Select Main Menu > CAMERA > REGISTRATION > Firmware, the Firmware interface is displayed. See Figure 5-88.

IMAGE Registration Status Firmware Upgrade ENCODE OVERLAY TP Address Manufacturer Type System Version No. Vi PTZ CHANNEL TYPE SD-E56 2.460.0001 2L01505YA PTZ CHANNEL TYPE SD-E56 2.460.0001 2L01505YA OCAXIAL UPGRADE Image: Control on the status Control on the status Image: Control on the status Control on the status Image: Control on the status Control on the status Image: Control on the status Control on the status Image: Control on th	CAMERA										LIVE		.	
OVERLAY 11 192.168.3.136 SD-E56 2.460.0001 2L01505YA PTZ CHANNEL TYPE > REGISTRATION COAXIAL UPGRADE	IMAGE	egistration		tatus		Firmware		Upg	grade					
OVERLAY 11 192.168.3.136 SD-E56 2.460.0001 2L01505YA PTZ CHANNEL TYPE	ENCODE	Channel	IP A	ddress	Mar	nufacturer	Тур	pe	System	Version	N).		Vi
CHANNEL TYPE COAXIAL UPGRADE	OVERLAY	11	192	.168.3.1	136							5YA.		
REGISTRATION COAXIAL UPGRADE	PTZ													
	CHANNEL TYPE													
	REGISTRATION													
	COAXIAL UPGRADE													
		4												
Refresh														
		Refresh												

Figure 5-88

5.6.2.3 Upgrading Remote Devices

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > CAMERA > REGISTRATION > Upgrade. The Upgrade interface is displayed. See Figure 5-89.

						LIVE	1 🔄 🖓 🗸 🛱
	IMAGE	Registration	Status	Firmware	Upgrade		
	ENCODE	Device Upgrad	de(0/1)				
	OVERLAY	Channel	Status IP Add	ress System Versior	n Process	Upgrade	Port
	PTZ	11	• 192.16		To be upgraded	Detect	37777
	CHANNEL TYPE						
>	REGISTRATION						
	COAXIAL UPGRADE						
				File	Upgrade Manual	Check Online	Upgrade



Step 2 Upgrade the device.

- File Upgrade
- 1) Insert a USB storage device containing the upgrade files into the USB port of the Device.
- 2) Select the devices that you want to upgrade.
- 3) Click File upgrade.

The File Upgrade interface is displayed.

- 4) Select the upgrading files and click **Apply**.
- Online Upgrade
- Click Detect or select the check box the device that you want to upgrade and click Manual Check.

The system starts detecting if there is a new version on the online server.

- 2) Select the check box of all the devices that have new version.
- 3) Click Online Upgrade.

- The system will pop up a message to indicate if the upgrading is successful.
- You can use the Type list to filter the devices so that you can find the devices quickly.

5.7 Configuring Record Settings

You can record video manually or automatically and configure the recording settings to main stream and sub stream respectively.

5.7.1 Enabling Record Control



- Manual recording operation requires the user have the permission to access STORAGE settings.
- Check to ensure the HDD installed in the Device has been formatted properly.

To enter the record control interface, do the following:

```
<u>Step 1</u> Right-click on the live view screen, the shortcut menu is displayed. On the shortcut menu, select Manual > Record Control.
```

The **RECORD** interface is displayed, see Figure 5-90.

RECORD																	
Main Stream	All	2	3	4	5	7	8	10	11	12	13	14	15	16			
Auto																	
Manual																	
Stop																	
Sub Stream																	
Auto																	
Manual																	
Stop																	
Snapshot																	
Enable																	
Disable																	
													Арр	oly	Ba	ack	

Figure 5-90

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the record control parameters. See Table 5-31.

Parameter	Description
Channel	Displays all the analog channels and the connected digital channels.
Channel	You can select a single channel or select All.
Record status	 Auto: Automatically record according to the record type and recording time as configured in the recording schedule. Manual: Keep general recording for 24 hours for the selected channel. Stop: Do not record.
Snapshot status	Enable or disable the scheduled snapshot for the corresponding channels.

Table 5-31

Step 3 Click Apply.

5.7.2 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule

You need to configure the storage schedule for the recorded video so that the recorded video can be saved. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule."

5.8 Configuring Snapshot Settings

5.8.1 Configuring Snapshot Trigger

The snapshot is divided into scheduled snapshot, event triggered snapshot, and face detection triggered snapshot. When the both are enabled, the event triggered snapshot has the priority.

- If there is no alarm event, the system performs scheduled snapshot.
- If there is any alarm event, the system performs event triggered snapshot.

5.8.1.1 Configuring Scheduled Snapshot

- <u>Step 1</u> Right-click on the live view screen, the shortcut menu is displayed.
- <u>Step 2</u> On the shortcut menu, select **Manual > Record Control**.

The **RECORD** interface is displayed.

<u>Step 3</u> In the **Snapshot** area, enable the snapshot for the channels if needed. See Figure 5-91.

	0 01.																					
RE	ECORD																					
	Main Stream	All	া	2	3	А	5	6	7	R	٩	10	11	12	13	14	15	16				
	Main ou cam	/ 111																				
	Auto																					
	Manual																					
	Stop																					
	Sub Stream																					
	Auto																					
	Manual																					
	Stop																					
	Snapshot																					
	Enable	Ó								0									1			
	Disable	0																				
																	Арр	ly		Bac	k	

Figure 5-91

Step 4 Select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot.

The **Snapshot** interface is displayed.

<u>Step 5</u> In the **Mode** list, select **General**, and then configure other parameters. See Figure 5-92.

				LIVE 💄 🕞 🗸 🧱
	IMAGE	Encode Sn	apshot	
>	ENCODE	Manual Snap	1 Time	
	OVERLAY			
	PTZ	Channel	1 *	
	CHANNEL TYPE	Mode	General	
	REGISTRATION	Image Size	352*288(CIF)	
	COAXIAL UPGRADE	Image Quality	4	
		Interval	1 SPL -	
		Default Co	ру	Apply Cancel

Figure 5-92

<u>Step 6</u> Click **Apply** to save the settings.

- If you have configured the snapshot schedule, the configuration has been completed.
- If you have not configured the snapshot schedule, see "5.1.4.10 Configuring Snapshot Storage Schedule."

5.8.1.2 Configuring Event Triggered Snapshot

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot. The Snapshot interface is displayed.

<u>Step 2</u> In the **Mode** list, select **Event**, and then configure other parameters. See Figure 5-93.

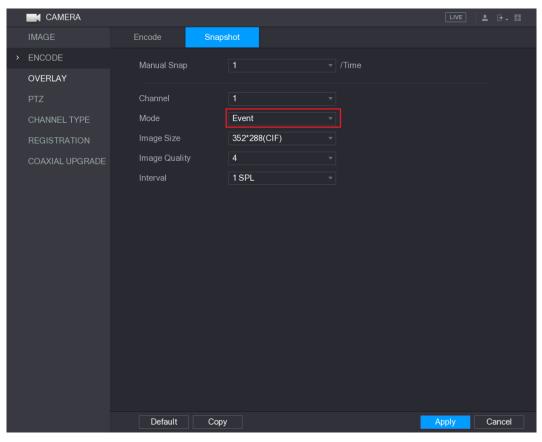


Figure 5-93

<u>Step 3</u> Select **Main Menu > ALARM > VIDEO DETECT**, and select the event type to configure, for example, select the **Motion Detect** tab. See Figure 5-94.

💄 ALARM				LIVE 🔄 🛃 💽 😨
ALARM INFO	Motion Detect Vide	eo Loss Tampering	Diagnosis	
ALARM INPUT	Channel	1	- Region	Setting
ALARM OUTPUT	Enable MD		Enable PIR	
> VIDEO DETECT				
ABNORMALITY	Period	Setting		5 Sec.
	Alarm Out	Setting		10 Sec.
	Show Message	Alarm Upload	Send Email	
	🔽 Record Channel			3 14 15 16
	PTZ	Setting		10 Sec.
	Tour	123456	7 8 9 10 11 12 1:	3 14 15 16
	🗹 Snapshot			3 14 15 16
	Video Matrix	Buzzer	🗌 Log	
	Voice Prompts	None		
	Default Cop	y Test		Apply Back
	Deladit Cop	y Test		Apply Back

Figure 5-94

<u>Step 4</u> Select the **Snapshot** check box and select the corresponding channel. <u>Step 5</u> Click **Apply**.

5.8.2 Configuring Snapshot Storage Schedule

You need to configure the storage schedule for the snapshot so that the snapshot can be saved. For details, see "5.1.4.10 Configuring Snapshot Storage Schedule."

5.8.3 Backing up Snapshots to FTP

Step 1 Select Main Menu > STORAGE > FTP.

The FTP interface is displayed. See Figure 5-95.

STORAGE						LIV	E	
BASIC	Enable			TP (Recomr	nended)			
SCHEDULE					lendedy			
HDD MANAGER	Server							
ADVANCE	Port	22						
QUOTA	Anonymity							
HDD DETECT	User Name							
REC ESTIMATE	Password							
FTP	Remote Directory							
	File Length(M)	0						
	Image Upload Interval(2						
	Channel	1						
	Week Day	Fri		 Alarm 	Intel	MD	General	
	Period 1	00:00 - 2	4 :00					
	Period 2	00:00 - 2	4 :00					
	Default Test					Apply	В	lack

Figure 5-95

<u>Step 2</u> Enable the FTP function and configure the parameters. For details, see "5.18.6 Configuring FTP Storage Settings." The snapshots will be uploaded to FTP for backup.

5.9 Playing Back Video

5.9.1 Enabling Record Control



- Manual recording operation requires the user have the permission to access STORAGE settings.
- Check to ensure the HDD installed in the Device has been formatted properly.

To enter the record control interface, do the following:

<u>Step 1</u> Right-click on the live view screen, the shortcut menu is displayed. On the shortcut menu, select **Manual > Record Control**. The **RECORD** interface is displayed, see Figure 5-96.

RECORD																
Main Stream	All	23	4	5	7	8	10	11	12	13	14	15	16			
Auto		•														
Manual																
Stop																
Sub Stream																
Auto																
Manual																
Stop		•														
Snapshot																
Enable																
Disable		•														
												Арр	oly	E	Back	

Figure 5-96

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the record control parameters. See Table 5-32.

Parameter	Description						
Channel	Displays all the analog channels and the connected digital channels.						
Channel	You can select a single channel or select All.						
	Auto: Automatically record according to the record type and						
	recording time as configured in the recording schedule.						
Record status	• Manual: Keep general recording for 24 hours for the selected						
	channel.						
	• Stop: Do not record.						
Snapshot status	Enable or disable the scheduled snapshot for the corresponding						
Shapshot status	channels.						

Table 5-32

5.9.2 Instant Playback

You can use the instant playback function to play back the previous five minutes to sixty minutes of the recorded video in any channel. For details about instant playback function, see "5.2.2.1 Instant Playback."

5.9.3 Main Interface of Video Playback

You can search for and play back the recorded video saved on the Device. Select **Main Menu > VIDEO**, the video search interface is displayed. See Figure 5-97.

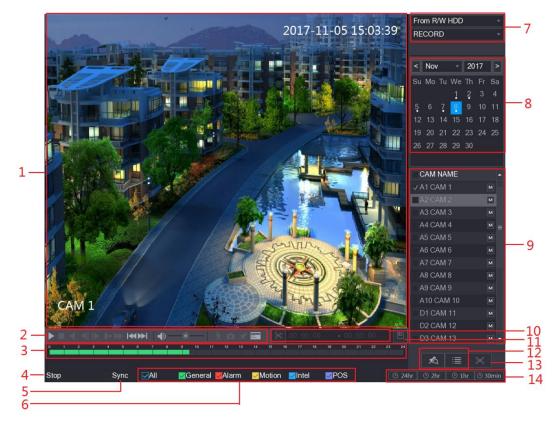


Figure 5-97

No.	Function	Description
		Display the searched recorded video or picture. It supports playing
		in single-channel, 4-channel, 9-channel, and 16-channel
		simultaneously.
1	Display Window	NOTE NOTE
1		When playing back in a single channel mode, hold down the left
		mouse button to select the area that you want to enlarge. The area
		is enlarged after the left mouse button is released. To exit the
		enlarged status, right-click on the image.
2	Playback	Playback control buttons. For details about the control buttons, see
2	Controls Bar	"5.9.3.1 Introducing Playback Controls."

No.	Function	Description
3	Time Bar	 Display the type and time period of the current recorded video. In the 4-channel layout, there are four time bars are displayed; in the other view layouts, only one time bar is displayed. Click on the colored area to start playback from a certain time. In the situation when you are configuring the settings, rotate the wheel button on the time bar, the time bar is zooming in from 0. In the situation when playback is ongoing, rotate the wheel button on the time bar, the time bar is zooming from the time point where the playback is located. Time bar colors: Green indicates general type; Red indicates external alarm; Yellow indicates motion detection; Blue indicates intelligent events; Purple indicates POS events. For some models, when you are clicking on the blank area in the time bar, the system automatically jumps to the next time point where there is a recorded video located.
4	Play Status	Includes two playback status: Play and Stop .
5	Sync	Select the Sync check box to simultaneously play recorded videos of different channels in the same period in multi-channel view.
6	Record type	Select the check box to define the recording type to search for.
7	Search type	Select the content to play back: Record , PIC , Splice Playback . For details about the selecting search type, see "5.9.3.2 Selecting Search Type."
8	Calendar	Click the date that you want to search, the time bar displays the corresponding record. The dates with record or snapshot have a small solid circle under the date.
9	View Layout and Channel Selection	 In the CAM NAME list, select the channel(s) that you want to play back. The window split is decided by how you select the channel(s). For example, if you select one channel, the playback is displayed in the single-channel view; if you select two to four channels, the playback is displayed in the four-channel view. The maximum is eight channels. Click I to switch the streams. I indicates main stream, and i indicates sub stream.
10	Video Splice	Splice a section of recorded video and save it. For details about splicing a recorded video, see "5.9.3.3 Clipping Recorded Video."
11	Backup	Back up the recorded video files. For details, see "5.9.3.4 Backing up Recorded Video."

No.	Function	Description
12	List Display	 This area includes Mark List and File List. Click the Mark List button, the marked recorded video list is displayed. Double-click the file to start playing. Click the File List button, the searched recorded video list is displayed. You can lock the files. For details, see "5.9.8 Using the File List."
13	Full Screen	Click to display in full screen. In the full screen mode, point to the bottom of the screen, the time bar is displayed. Right-click on the screen to exit full screen mode.
14	Time Bar Unit	You can select 24hr, 2hr, 1hr, or 30min as the unit of time bar. The time bar display changes with the setting.
		Table 5-33

5.9.3.1 Introducing Playback Controls Bar

You can perform the operations such as control the speed of playback, add mark, and take snapshots through the playback controls bar. See Figure 5-98 and Table 5-34.



Figure 5-98

The play backward function and playback speed are dependent on the product version. The actual product shall govern. You can also contact the technical support to consult the hardware version information.

lcon	Function				
N II	Play/Pause.				
	During playing back, you can switch between play and pause.				
	Stop.				
	During playing back, you can click the Stop button to stop playback.				
	Play Backward.				
	• During playing back, click the Play Backward button to backward				
◀ , II	play the recorded video, the button switches to III; click III				
	to stop playing backward.				
	 During playing back, click to start playing forward. 				

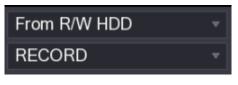
Icon	Function
	Previous Frame/Next Frame.
⊲I , I►	 When the playback is paused, click or click to play single-frame recorded video. When playing back single-frame recorded video, click to start playing forward.
	Slow Playback.
▶	 During playing back, click to set the speed of slow playback as SlowX1/2, SlowX1/4, SlowX1/8, or SlowX1/16. During fast playback, click to slow down the speed of fast playback.
	Fast Playback.
*	 During playing back, click to set the speed of fast playback as FastX2, FastX4, FastX8, or FastX16. During slow playback, click to speed up slow playback.
€	Previous Day/Next Day. Click or click to play the previous day or next day of the current recorded video.
-0	Adjust volume of playback.
文	Smart Search. For details about using the smart search, see "5.9.4 Smart Search."
D	In the full screen mode, click to take a snapshot and save into the USB storage device or mobile HDD.
*	Add Mark for the recorded view. For details about adding mark, see "5.9.5 Marking and Playing Back Video."
	Show or hide POS information.
2027 Alexand	During single-channel playback, click to show or hide POS information on the screen.

Table 5-34

5.9.3.2 Selecting Search Type

You can search the recorded videos, splice, or snapshots from HDD or external storage device.

• From R/W HDD: Recorded videos or snapshots playback from HDD of the Device. See Figure 5-99.





• From I/O Device: Recorded videos playback from external storage device. See Figure 5-100.

Click Browse, select the save path of recorded video file that you want to play.

Double-click the video file or click with to start playing.



Figure 5-100

5.9.3.3 Clipping Recorded Video

During playback, clip sections of recorded video and save to the USB storage device. For the video clip interface, see Figure 5-101.

\approx			
-----------	--	--	--



Step 1 Select a recorded video that you want to play.

- Click loss to start playing from the beginning.
- Double-click anywhere in the time bar colored area to start playback.
- <u>Step 2</u> Click on the time bar to select the start time, and then click k to start clipping.
- Step 3 Click on the time bar to select the end time, and then click k to stop clipping.

Step 4 Click

The **BACKUP** dialog box is displayed. You can back up the files.

- You can clip the video of a single-channel or multiple channels.
- Maximum 1024 files can be backed up at one time.
- The files that are selected in the File List cannot be clipped.

5.9.3.4 Backing up Recorded Video

You can back up the recorded video file or splice video file into the USB storage device.

- <u>Step 1</u> Select the recorded video file that you want to back up. You can select the following two types of files:
 - Recorded video file: Click III, the **File List** area is displayed. Select the file(s) that you want to back up.
 - Splice video file. For details about splicing video file, see "5.9.3.3 Clipping Recorded Video."

Step 2 Click

The **BACKUP** dialog box is displayed. See Figure 5-102.

BAC	KUP							
	1	Nam	ne(Type)	Free S	pace/Total Spa	ace	Device Status	
		√ sdb5(USE	B DISK)	15.60) GB/15.60 GB		Ready	
	2	🗸 СН Туре	Start Time	е	End Time	Size(ł	KB)	
		√ 1 R	17-11-08 01	:00:00	17-11-08 02:0	00:00 18	347872	
	2	√ 1 R	17-11-08 02	:00:00	17-11-08 03:0	00:00 18	347632	
	Space I	Required / Sp	ace Remainin	g:3.52 G	GB/15.60 GB	Backu	p Clear	

Figure 5-102

Step 3 Click Backup.

If you do not want to back the file, clear the check box.

5.9.4 Smart Search

During playback, you can analyze a certain area to find if there was any motion detection event occurred. The system will display the images with motion events of the recorded video.

III NOTE

Not all models support this function.

To use the Smart Search function, you need to enable the motion detection for the channel by selecting **Main Menu > ALARM > VIDEO DETECT > Motion Detect**.

To use the Smart Search function, do the following:

<u>Step 1</u> Select **Main Menu > VIDEO**, the video search interface is displayed.

<u>Step 2</u> In the **CAME NAME** list, select the channel(s) that you want to play.

Step 3 Click or double-click anywhere in the time bar colored area to start playback.

Step 4 Click



The grid is displayed on the screen.

D NOTE

- Only single-channel supports smart search.
- If multi-channels are selected, double-click on the channel window to display this channel only on the screen, and then you can start using smart search function.
- <u>Step 5</u> Drag the pointer to select the searching area.

III NOTE

The grid area supports 22×18(PAL) and 22×15(NTSC).

Step 6 Click

The screen starts playing back the motional splices of recorded video for the selected searching area.

Step 7 Click to exit the playback.

5.9.5 Marking and Playing Back Video

You can mark the recording for somewhere important. Then you can easily find the marked recording by searching time and mark name.

Marking a Video

<u>Step 1</u> Select **Main Menu > VIDEO**, the video search interface is displayed.

Step 2 In the playback mode, click

The Add Mark dialog box is displayed. See Figure 5-103.

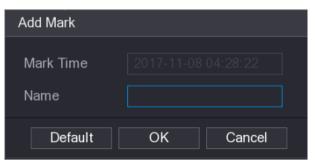


Figure 5-103

- <u>Step 3</u> In the **Name** box, enter a name.
- Step 4 Click OK.

This marked video file displays in the Mark List.

Playing Back Marked Video

III NOTE

This function is supported on single-channel playback. <u>Step 1</u> In the **CAME NAME** list, select one channel.



The Mark List interface is displayed. See Figure 5-104.

00 : 00 : 00	۹
1	
Mark Time Name	
03:19:30 123	
10:30:34 456	
Name	
Play time before the mark	
0 Sec.	

Figure 5-104

<u>Step 3</u> Double-click the file that you want to play back.

To search the marked video by time, in the SEARCH box on the top of the interface,

enter the time, and then click

Playing Back Time before the Mark

You can configure to play N seconds of the marked video before the marked time.

<u>Step 1</u> In the **Name** box, enter the name of a marked video.

<u>Step 2</u> In the **Playback time before the mark** box, enter N seconds.

Step 3 Click

The playback starts from N seconds before the marked time.

If there is N seconds exist before the marked time, the playback starts from N seconds before the marked time. If there is not, it plays back as much as there is.

Managing Marked Video

In the Mark List interface, click k, the Manager interface is displayed. See Figure 5-105.

Manager		
Channel	5 🔹	
Start Time	2017 - 11 - 08 00 : 00 : 00	
End Time	2017 - 11 - 09 00 : 00 : 00	Search
2 CH	Mark Time	Name
1 5	2017-11-08 03:19:30	123
2 5	2017-11-08 10:30:34	456
Delete		Cancel

Figure 5-105

- Be default, it manages all the marked videos of the selected channel.
- To search the marked video, select channel number from the **Channel** list, enter time in **Start Time** box and **End Time** box, and then click **Search**.
- All the marked videos display in time order.
- To modify the name of marked video, double-click a marked video, the **Edit Mark** dialog box is displayed.
- To delete the marked video, select the marked video, and then click **Delete**.

After opening the **Manager** interface, the playback will pause until exiting this interface. If the marked video that was in playing back is deleted, the playback will start from the first marked video in the **Mark List**.

5.9.6 Playing Back Snapshots

You can search and play back the snapshots.

- <u>Step 1</u> Select **Main Menu > VIDEO**, the video search interface is displayed.
- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Search Type** list, select **PIC**.
- Step 3 In the Channel list, select a channel number.
- <u>Step 4</u> In the **Calendar** area, select a date.

Step 5 Click

The system starts playing snapshots according to the configured intervals.

5.9.7 Playing Back Splices

You can clip the recorded video files into splices and then play back at the same time to save your time.

Not all models support this function.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > VIDEO, the video search interface is displayed.

Step 2 In the Search Type list, select Splice Playback; In the Split Mode list, select 4, 9, or 16. See Figure 5-106.

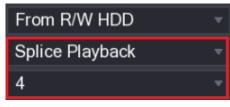


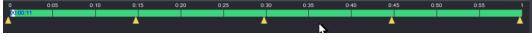
Figure 5-106

<u>Step 3</u> In the **Calendar** area, select a date.

<u>Step 4</u> In the **CAM NAME** list, select a channel.

Only single-channel supports this function.

- Step 5 Start playing back splices. See Figure 5-107.
 - Click Late, the playback starts from the beginning.
 - Double-click anywhere on the time bar, the playback starts from where you click.





NOTE

Every recorded video file must be at least five minutes. If a recorded video file is less than 20 minutes but still choose to split into four windows, the system will automatically adjust the windows quantity to ensure every splice is more than five minutes, and in this case it is possible that there are no images are displaying in some windows.

5.9.8 Using the File List

You can view all the recorded videos within a certain period from any channel in the File List.

- <u>Step 1</u> Select **Main Menu > VIDEO**, the video search interface is displayed.
- Step 2 Select a channel(s).

Step 3 Click

The File List interface is displayed. See Figure 5-108.

00:00:00 Q
1 StartTime Type
00:00:00 R
01:00:00 R
02:00:00 R
03:00:00 R
04:00:00 R
05:00:00 R
06:00:00 R
07:00:00 R
08:00:00 R
09:00:00 R
10:00:00 R
11:00:00 R
Start Time 17-11-08 00:00:00
End Time
17-11-08 01:00:00
Size(KB) 1847776

Figure 5-108

Step 4 Start playback.

- Click , the playback starts from the first file by default.
- Click any file, the system plays back this file.

D NOTE

- In the time box on the top of the file list interface, you can enter the specific time to search the file that you want to view.
- In the File List area, there are 128 files can be displayed.
- File type: R indicates general recorded video; A indicates recorded video with external alarms; M indicates recorded video with motion detection events; I indicates recorded video with intelligent vents.
- Click to return to the interface with calendar and CAM NAME list.

Locking and Unlocking the Recorded Video

• To lock the recorded video, on the **File List** interface, select the check box of the recorded

video, and then click

• To view the locked information, click *III*, the **FILE LOCKED** interface is displayed.

The recorded video that is under writing or overwriting cannot be locked.

 To unlock the recorded video, in the FILE LOCKED interface, select the video, and then click Unlock. See Figure 5-109.

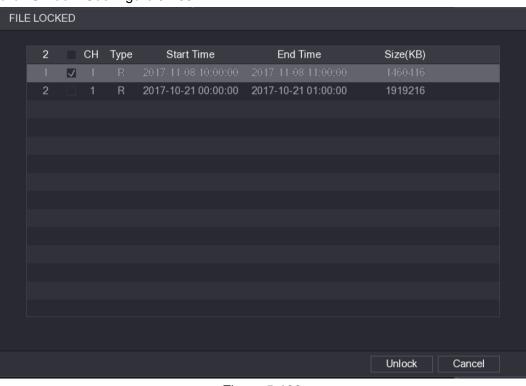


Figure 5-109

5.10 Alarm Events Settings

5.10.1 Alarm Information

You can search, view and back up the alarm information.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > ALARM INFO.

The **ALARM INFO** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-110.

	🚨 ALARM				
>	ALARM INFO				
	ALARM INPUT	Туре	All		
		Start Time	2018 - 02 - 05 00 : 00 :	: 00	
	ALARM OUTPUT	End Time	2018 -02 -06 00 :00 :	: 00	Search
	VIDEO DETECT	49 Log Time	Event	Playba	
	ABNORMALITY		11:37:46 <video 7="" :="" loss=""></video>	Fidyba ()	-
			11:37:46 <video 8="" :="" loss=""></video>		
			13:38:19 <tampering 1="" :=""></tampering>		
			13:38:24 <tampering 1="" :=""></tampering>		
			15:03:10 <tampering 9="" :=""></tampering>		
			15:03:12 <tampering 9="" :=""></tampering>		
			15:18:51 <video 2="" :="" loss=""></video>		
			15:18:51 <video 3="" :="" loss=""></video>		
		44 2018-02-05	15:18:51 <video 4="" :="" loss=""></video>		
		45 2018-02-05	15:18:51 <video 5="" :="" loss=""></video>		
		46 2018-02-05	15:18:51 <video 6="" :="" loss=""></video>		
		47 2018-02-05	15:18:51 No HDD		
		48 2018-02-05	15:18:51 <video 7="" :="" loss=""></video>		
		49 2018-02-05			
			< 1/1	> Go To 1 Bac	kup Details

Figure 5-110

- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Type** list, select the event type; In the **Start Time** box and **End Time** box, enter the specific time.
- Step 3 Click Search.

The search results are displayed.

- <u>Step 4</u> Click **Backup** to back up the search results into the external storage device.

 - Click 🔘 to play the recorded video of alarm event.
 - Select an event and click **Details** to view the detailed information of the event.

5.10.2 Alarm Input Settings

Connect the alarm input and output ports by referring to "4.3 Connecting to Alarm Input and Output." You can configure the alarm settings for each channel individually or apply the settings to all channels and then save the settings.

5.10.2.1 Configuring Local Alarms

You can connect the alarm device to the alarm input port of the Device. When the alarm is activated on the alarm device, the alarm information will be uploaded to the Device, and then the Device outputs the local alarms in the way that you configure in this section.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > ALARM > ALARM INPUT > Local.

The Local interface is displayed. See Figure 5-111.

🔔 ALARM				
ALARM INFO	Local Al	arm Box IPC Ext	IPC Offline	HDCVI Alarm
ALARM INPUT ALARM OUTPUT	Alarm In Enable	1 *	Alarm Name Type	Alarm In1 NO ▼
VIDEO DETECT ABNORMALITY	Period Alarm Out Show Message Record Channel PTZ Tour Snapshot Video Matrix Voice Prompts	Setting Setting ✓ Alarm Upload 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 Setting 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 Buzzer None •	Post Record	5 Sec. 10 Sec. 13 14 15 16 10 Sec. 13 14 15 16 13 14 15 16
	Default Co	ру		Apply Back

Figure 5-111

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the local alarms. See Table 5-35

Parameter	Description					
Alarm In	Select the channel number.					
Alarm Name	nter the customized alarm name.					
Enable	Enable or disable the local alarm function.					
Туре	In the Type list, select NO or select NC as the voltage output type.					
	Click Setting to display setting interface.					
Period	Define a period during which the motion detection is active. For details,					
Fenou	see "Setting Motion Detection Period" section in "5.10.4.1 Configuring					
	Motion Detect Settings."					
Anti-Dither	Configure the time period from end of event detection to the stop of					
Anti-Dimer	alarm.					
	Click Setting to display setting interface.					
	General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices					
	connected to the selected output port.					
Alarm Out	External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected					
	alarm box.					
	Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices					
	connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.					
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the					
Latch	external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds to 300					
	seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.					
Show Message	Select the Show Message check box to enable a pop-up message in					
Show Wessaye	your local host PC.					

Parameter	Description		
	Select the Alarm Upload check box to enable the system to upload the		
Alarm Upload	alarm signal to the network (including alarm center) when an alarm		
	event occurs.		
	Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an		
	email notification when an alarm event occurs.		
Send Email	D NOTE		
	To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main		
	Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.		
	Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s)		
	starts recording after an alarm event occurs.		
Record Channel	D NOTE		
Record Channel	The recording for local alarm recording and auto recording must be		
	enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage		
	Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."		
	Click Setting to display the PTZ interface.		
PTZ	Enable PTZ linkage actions, such as selecting the preset that you want		
	to be called when an alarm event occurs.		
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after		
Post Record	the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300		
	seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.		
Tour	Select the Tour check box to enable a tour of the selected channels.		
	Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected		
	channel.		
Snapshot	D NOTE		
	To use this function, select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE >		
	Snapshot, in the Mode list, select Event.		
	Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event		
	occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main		
Video Matrix	Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR."		
	NOTE NOTE		
	Not all models support this function.		
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.		
Log	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.		
Voice Dromate	Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a local		
Voice Prompts	alarm event.		
	· · ·		

Table 5-35

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

- Click **Default** to restore the default setting.
- Click **Copy**, in the **Copy** dialog box, select the additional channel(s) that you want to copy the local alarm settings to, and then click **Apply**.

5.10.2.2 Configuring Alarms from Alarm Box

You can connect the alarm box to the RS-485 port of the Device. When the alarm is detected by the alarm box, the alarm information will be uploaded to the Device, and then the Device outputs the alarms in the way that you configure in this section.

	🖲 ALARM					LIVE	
	ALARM INFO	Local	Alarm Box	IPC Ext	IPC Offline	HDCVI Alar	
>	ALARM INPUT	Alarm Box	4		Status		
	ALARM OUTPUT	Alarm In	1		Alarma	Alarm In49	
	VIDEO DETECT	Enable			Туре	NO 🔻	
	ABNORMALITY	Period	Settir	2			
		Alarm Out	Settir		Latch	10 Se	
		Show Mess		.9	Send Email		
		 ✓ Record Cha					
		PTZ	Settir	g	Post Record	10 Se	
		Tour					
		Snapshot					
		Video Matri	ix 🗌 Buzz	er	🔽 Log		
		Voice Prom	ipts None				
		Default				Apply	Back

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > ALARM INPUT > Alarm Box. The Alarm Box interface is displayed. See Figure 5-112.

Figure 5-112

- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Alarm Box** list, select the alarm box number corresponding to the address number configured by the DIP switch on the Alarm Box.
- Step 3 In the Alarm In list, select the alarm input port on the Alarm Box.
- <u>Step 4</u> Configure the settings for other parameters of the Alarm Box. For details, see Table 5-35.
- <u>Step 5</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

Click **Default** to restore the default setting.

5.10.2.3 Configuring Alarms from External IP Cameras

Step 1 Select Main Menu > ALARM > ALARM INPUT > IPC Ext.

The IPC Ext interface is displayed. See Figure 5-113.

🔔 ALARM				
ALARM INFO	Local A	Alarm Box IPC	Ext IPC Offline	HDCVI Alarm
ALARM INPUT ALARM OUTPUT VIDEO DETECT	Channel Enable	13	✓ Alarm Name Type	Alarm In13 NO +
ABNORMALITY	Period Alarm Out Show Message Record Channel PTZ Tour Snapshot	Setting Setting ✓ Alarm Upload 1 2 3 4 5 Setting 1 2 3 4 5	Post Record	5 Sec. 10 Sec. 3 14 15 16 10 Sec. 3 14 15 16 3 14 15 16
	Uideo Matrix	Buzzer None	v v v v v v v v v v v v v v v v v v v	
	Default	Copy Refresh		Apply Back

Figure 5-113

- Step 2 Configure the alarm input settings from the external IPC. For details, see Table 5-35.
- <u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

- Click **Default** to restore the default setting.
- Click **Copy** to copy the settings to other channels.
- Click Refresh to refresh configured settings.

5.10.2.4 Configuring Alarms for IP Camera Offline

You can configure the alarm settings for the situation when the IP camera is offline. <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > ALARM INPUT > IPC Offline. The IPC Offline interface is displayed. See Figure 5-114.

🔔 ALARM				
ALARM INFO	Local Ala	rm Box IPC Ext	IPC Offline	HDCVI Alarm
> ALARM INPUT	Channel	13		
ALARM OUTPUT	Enable			
VIDEO DETECT				
ABNORMALITY	Alarm Out	Setting ✓ Alarm Upload	Latch 10	0 Sec.
	Record Channel			
	PTZ	Setting	Post Record 10	
	Tour			
	Snapshot			
	Video Matrix	Buzzer	✓ Log	
	Uoice Prompts	None		
	Default Cop	У		Apply Back

Figure 5-114

- Step 2 Configure the alarm input settings from the offline IPC. For details, see Table 5-35.
- <u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.
 - NOTE
 - Click Default to restore the default setting.
 - Click **Copy** to copy the settings to other channels.

5.10.2.5 Configuring Alarms from HDCVI Devices

Step 1 Select Main Menu > ALARM > ALARM INPUT > HDCVI Alarm.

The HDCVI Alarm interface is displayed. See Figure 5-115.

📒 ALARM					
ALARM INFO	Local	Alarm Box	IPC Ext	IPC Offline	HDCVI Alarm
> ALARM INPUT	Channel	All			
ALARM OUTPUT	1 Fach	- Catting Chattan	Channel	Turne	Name
VIDEO DETECT	1 Enab	e Setting Status		Type CVI Voltage Alarm	Chn1-HDCVI Voltage Alarm-1
ABNORMALITY					,
					Þ
					Apply Back
					Apply Back

Figure 5-115

- <u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for other parameters of the Alarm Box. For details, see Table 5-35.
- <u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

5.10.3 Alarm Output Settings

5.10.3.1 Configuring Alarm Output

When the Device activates alarms, the connected alarm device generates alarms in the way that you can configure in this section. You can connect to the output port of the Device or connect wirelessly.

- **Auto**: When an alarm event is triggered on the Device, the connected alarm device generates alarms.
- Manual: The alarm device is forced to keep generating alarms.
- **Stop**: The alarm output function is not enabled.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > ALARM OUTPUT > ALARM Out.

The ALARM OUTPUT interface is displayed. See Figure 5-116.

	ALARM			 	LIVE	L →
ALÆ	ARM INFO	Alarm Out	White Light			
ALA	ARM INPUT	General Alarm				
> ALA	ARM OUTPUT	Alarm Type	All 1 2 3			
	DEO DETECT NORMALITY	Manual Stop Status Ext. Alarm Alarm Box Alarm Type Auto Manual				
		Stop Status Alarm Release	ОК			
					Apply	Back

Figure 5-116

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the alarm output. For details, see Table 5-36.

	Description			
Alarm Type	Select alarm type for each alarm output port.			
Status	Indicates the status of each alarm output port.			
Alarm Box	Select the alarm box number corresponding to the address			
	number configured by the DIP switch on the Alarm Box.			
Alarm Type	Select the alarm type for each alarm output ports.			
Status	Indicates the status of each alarm output port.			
	Click OK to clear all alarm output status.			
	Status Alarm Box Alarm Type			

Table 5-36

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to save the settings.

5.10.3.2 Configuring White Light

When the motion detection alarm is activated, the system links the camera to generate white light alarm.

To use this function, connect at least one white light camera to your Device.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > ALARM > ALARM OUTPUT > White Light.

The White Light interface is displayed. See Figure 5-117.

	🔔 ALARM			
	ALARM INFO	Alarm Out White	Light Siren	
	ALARM INPUT	Channel	2 *	
>	ALARM OUTPUT			
	VIDEO DETECT	Latch	30 Sec.	
	ABNORMALITY	Mode	💿 Solid On 🛛 Flash	
		Flash Frequency		
		Refresh		Apply Back

Figure 5-117

Step 2 Configure the settings for the white light parameters. See Table 5-37.

Parameter	Description			
Channel	In the Channel list, select a channel that is connected to a white			
Channel	light camera.			
Latch	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 5 seconds to 30 seconds, and the default value is 5 seconds.			
Mode	Set the alarm mode of white light to be Solid on or Flash .			
Flash Frequency	When setting the alarm mode of white light to be Flash , you can select the flash frequency from Low , Middle , and High .			
Tabla 5 27				

Table 5-37

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

5.10.3.3 Configuring Siren

When the motion detection alarm is activated, the system links the camera to generate sound alarm.

To use this function, connect at least one camera that supports audio function.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > ALARM > ALARM OUTPUT > Siren.

The **Siren** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-118.

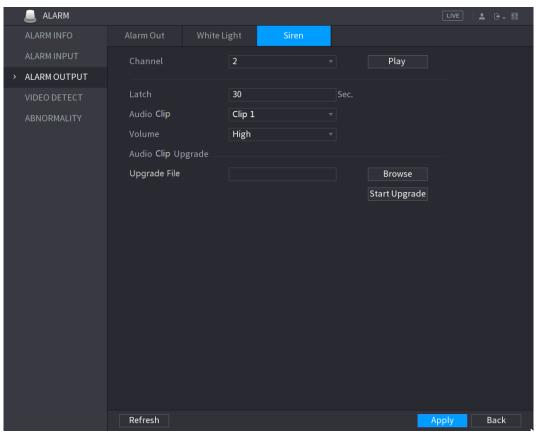


Figure 5-118

Step 2 Configure the settings for the siren parameters. See Table 5-38.

Parameter	Description			
Channel	In the Channel list, select a channel that is connected to a camera that supports audio function.			
Play	Click Play to manually trigger the IP camera to play audio file.			
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the			
Latch	alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 5 seconds to 30 seconds,			
	and the default value is 5 seconds.			
Audio Clip	Select the audio clip for the siren sound. The default setting is Clip 1.			
Volume	Select the volume for the audio clip. You can select the volume from			
volume	Low, Middle, and High.			
	Import the upgrade audio file (.bin) to upgrade the alarm audio file of the			
Update File	camera. For details, see "Upgrade Audio File of Camera			
	" -			

Table 5-38

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

Upgrade Audio File of Camera

This function is supported only on the local interface.

<u>Step 1</u> Prepare a USB device or other external storage device and plug it into the Device.

Step 2 Click Browse.

The Browse interface is displayed. See Figure 5-119.

Browse					
Device Name	sdb5(USB USB)	Refresh			
Total Space	15.62 GB				
Free Space	14.51 GB				
Address					
Name		Size	Туре	Delete	
printf_201802020	93719.txt	1.0 KB	File		
kmsg_printf_201	80202093719.txt	21.2 KB	File	ŵ	
📄 printf.txt		648.0 KB	File		
🗎 kmsg_printf.txt		1.7 KB	File	â	
printf_201802020	94124.txt	903 B	File		
🗎 kmsg_printf_201	80202094124.txt	0 B	File	ā	
Update File					
			OK	Back	

Figure 5-119

- <u>Step 3</u> Select the upgrade audio file (.bin).
- <u>Step 4</u> Click **OK** to return to the Siren interface.
- Step 5 Click Start Upgrade to upgrade the alarm audio file of the camera.

5.10.4 Video Detection

Video detection adopts computer vision and image processing technology. The technology analyzes the video images to detect the obvious changes such as moving objects and blurriness. The system activates alarms when such changes are detected.

5.10.4.1 Configuring Motion Detect Settings

When the moving object appears and moves fast enough to reach the preset sensitivity value, the system activates the alarm.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > VIDIEO DETECT > Motion Detect.

The Motion Detect interface is displayed. See Figure 5-120.

🔔 ALARM					[LIVE	2
ALARM INFO	Motion Detect Vi	deo Loss	Tampering	Diagnosis			
ALARM INPUT	Channel	1		Region	Setting		
ALARM OUTPUT	Enable MD			Enable PIR			
> VIDEO DETECT							
ABNORMALITY	Period	Setting		Anti-Dither	5	Sec.	
	Alarm Out	Setting		Latch	10	Sec.	
	Show Message	🗌 Alarm U	Jpload	Send Email			
	🛃 Record Channel						
	PTZ	Setting		Post Record	10	Sec.	
	🗌 Tour						
	🗌 Snapshot						
	🗌 Buzzer			🗌 Log			
	Voice Prompts	None					
	🗌 White Light	Siren					
	Default				4.00		Pack
	Default Co	ору Т	est		Apr	ny	Back

Figure 5-120

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the motion detection parameters. See Table 5-39.

Parameter	Description		
Channel	In the Channel list, select a channel to set the motion detection.		
Region	Click Setting to define the motion detection region.		
Enable MD	Enable or disable the motion detection function.		
Enable PIR	 PIR function helps enhancing the accuracy and validity of motion detect. It can filter the meaningless alarms that are activated by the objects such as falling leaves, flies. The detection range by PIR is smaller than the field angle. PIR function is enabled by default if it is supported by the cameras. Enabling PIR function will get the motion detect to be enabled automatically to generate motion detection alarms; if the PIR function is not enabled, the motion detect just has the general effect. Only when the channel type is CVI, the PIR function can be enabled. If the camera does not support PIR function, it will be unusable. If the Device does not support PIR function, it will not be displayed on the interface. 		
Period	Define a period during which the motion detection is active.		
Anti-Dither	Configure the time period from end of event detection to the stop of alarm.		

Parameter	Description		
Alarm Out	 Click Setting to display setting interface. General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices connected to the selected output port. External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected alarm box. Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices connected by USB gateway or camera gateway. 		
Latch	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds. If you enter 0, there will be no delay.		
Show Message	Select the Show Message check box to enable a pop-up message in your local host PC.		
Alarm Upload	Select the Alarm Upload check box to enable the system to upload the alarm signal to the network (including alarm center) when an alarm event occurs.		
Send Email	Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs. NOTE To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL .		
Record Channel	Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs. NOTE The recording for motion detection and auto recording function must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."		
PTZ	Click Setting to display the PTZ interface. Enable PTZ linkage actions, such as selecting the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.		
Post Record	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to		
Tour	300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds. Select the Tour check box to enable a tour of the selected channels.		
Snapshot	Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel. NOTE To use this function, select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot , in the Mode list, select Event .		

Parameter	Description	
Video Matrix	Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event	
	occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in	
	Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR.	
	NOTE NOTE	
	Not all models support this function.	
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.	
Log	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm	
Log	log.	
Voice Prompts	Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a	
	motion detection event.	
White Light	Select the check box to enable the white light alarm of the camera.	
Siren	Select the check box to enable the sound alarm of the camera.	

Table 5-39

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to save the settings.

- Click **Default** to restore the default setting.
- Click **Copy**, in the **Copy** dialog box, select the additional channel(s) that you want to copy the motion detection settings to, and then click **Apply**.
- Click **Test** to test the settings.

Setting the Motion Detection Region

<u>Step 1</u> Next to **Region**, click **Setting**.

The region setting screen is displayed.

- <u>Step 2</u> Point to the middle top of the interface.
 - The setting interface is displayed. See Figure 5-121.

1	2	3	4
Name	Region1		
Sensitivity		- o + 6	30
Threshold	- •	+	0

Figure 5-121

<u>Step 3</u> Configure the regions settings. You can configure totally four regions.

- 1) Select one region, for example, click 10.
- Drag on the screen to select the region that you want to detect. The selected area shows the color that represents the region.
- 3) Configure the parameters.

Parameter	Description
Name	Enter a name for the region.
Sensitivity	Every region of every channel has an individual sensitivity value.
	The bigger the value is, the easier the alarms can be activated.

Parameter	Description
Threshold	Adjust the threshold for motion detect. Every region of every channel
	has an individual threshold.

Figure 5-122

When anyone of the four regions activates motion detect alarm, the channel where this region belongs to will activate motion detect alarm.

- <u>Step 4</u> Right-click on the screen to exit the region setting interface.
- <u>Step 5</u> On the **Motion Detect** interface, click **Apply** to complete the settings.

Setting Motion Detection Period

DI NOTE

The system only activates the alarm in the defined period.

<u>Step 1</u> Next to **Period**, click **Setting**.

The **Setting** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-123.





<u>Step 2</u> Define the motion detection period. By default, it is active all the time.

- Define the period by drawing.
 - ◇ Define for a specified day of a week: On the timeline, click the half-hour blocks to select the active period.

switches to . On the timeline of any selected day, click the half-hour blocks

to select the active periods, all the days with 📟 will take the same settings.

♦ Define for all days of a week: Click All, all 🛄 switches to 🔤. On the

timeline of any day, click the half-hour blocks to select the active periods, all the days will take the same settings.

• Define the period by editing. Take Sunday as an example.



The **Period** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-124.

Period	
Current Date:	Sunday
Period 1	00:00 - 24:00
Period 2	00:00 - 24:00
Period 3	00:00 - 24:00
Period 4	00:00 - 24:00
Period 5	00:00 - 24:00
Period 6	00:00 - 24:00
Сору	
Sunday	🗌 Monday 🔄 Tuesday 📄 Wednesday 📄 Thursday 📄 Friday 📄 Saturday
	OK Back

Figure 5-124

- 2) Enter the time frame for the period, and then select the check box to enable the settings.
 - \diamond There are six periods for you to set for each day.
 - ♦ Under Copy, select All to apply the settings to all the days of a week, or select specific day(s) that you want to apply the settings to.
- 3) Click **OK** to save the settings.
- <u>Step 3</u> On the **Motion Detect** interface, click **Apply** to complete the settings.

5.10.4.2 Configuring Video Loss Settings

When the video loss occurs, the system activates the alarm.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > VIDIEO DETECT > Video Loss. The Video Loss interface is displayed. See Figure 5-125.

💄 ALARM					LIV	Æ	L 🕞 🗸 🔛
ALARM INFO	Motion Detect Vi	deo Loss Tan	npering	Diagnosis			
ALARM INPUT	Channel	1					
ALARM OUTPUT	Enable						
> VIDEO DETECT			~				
ABNORMALITY	Period Alarm Out	Setting Setting	CA Lat	M AntiDither		Sec. Sec.	
	Show Message	Alarm Upload		Send Email		Sec.	
	Record Channel	1 2 3 4		10 11 12 13			
	PTZ	Setting	Pos	st Record		Sec.	
	Tour						
	Snapshot						
	Buzzer	🗹 Log					
	Voice Prompts	None					
	Default Co	рру			Apply		Back

Figure 5-125

<u>Step 2</u> To configure the settings for the video loss detection parameters, see "5.10.4.1 Configuring Motion Detect Settings."

For PTZ activation, different from motion detection, the video loss detection can activate PTZ preset, tour, and pattern.

Step 3 Click Apply to complete the settings.

- Click **Default** to restore the default setting.
- Click **Copy**, in the **Copy** dialog box, select the additional channel(s) that you want to copy the motion detection settings to, and then click **Apply**.

5.10.4.3 Configuring Tampering Settings

When the camera lens is covered, or the video is displayed in a single color because of the causes such as sunlight status, the monitoring cannot be continued normally. To avoid such situations, you can configure the tampering alarm settings.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > ALARM > VIDIEO DETECT > Tampering.

The Tampering interface is displayed. See Figure 5-126.

🔔 ALARM				
ALARM INFO	Motion Detect Vid	eo Loss Tampering	Diagnosis	
ALARM INPUT	Channel	1		
ALARM OUTPUT	Enable		Sensitivity	3 -
> VIDEO DETECT		O with a		
ABNORMALITY	Period Alarm Out	Setting	CAM AntiDither Latch	0 Sec. 10 Sec.
	Show Message	Setting Alarm Upload	Send Email	io Sec.
	Record Channel	1 2 3 4 5 6 7		3 14 15 16
	PTZ	Setting	Post Record	10 Sec.
	Tour			3 14 15 16
	Snapshot			3 14 15 16
	Buzzer	🔽 Log		
	Voice Prompts	None		
	Default Cop	ру		Apply Back

Figure 5-126

<u>Step 2</u> To configure the settings for the tampering detection parameters, see "5.10.4.1 Configuring Motion Detect Settings."

For PTZ activation, different from motion detection, the video loss detection can activate PTZ preset, tour, and pattern.

Step 3 Click Apply to complete the settings.

D NOTE

- Click **Default** to restore the default setting.
- Click **Copy**, in the **Copy** dialog box, select the additional channel(s) that you want to copy the motion detection settings to, and then click **Apply**.

5.10.4.4 Configuring Diagnosis Settings

This function can be used only when it is supported by the camera.

When the video appear the conditions such as blurry, overexposed, or the color changes, the system activates the alarm.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > VIDIEO DETECT > Diagnosis.

The Diagnosis interface is displayed. See Figure 5-127.

🔔 ALARM					
ALARM INFO	Motion Detect	Video Loss	Tampering	Diagnosis	
ALARM INPUT	Channel	1			
ALARM OUTPUT	Enable			Rule	Setting
> VIDEO DETECT	Period	Setting			
ABNORMALITY	Alarm Out	Setting Alarm	Upload •	Latch	10 Sec.
	Default				Apply Back

Figure 5-127

- <u>Step 2</u> To configure the settings for the diagnosis parameters, see "5.10.4.1 Configuring Motion Detect Settings."
- <u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

Click **Default** to restore the default setting.

Setting the Types for Diagnosing Targets

<u>Step 1</u> Next to **Rule**, click **Setting**.

The **Diagnosis** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-128.

Diagnosis		
Stripe Noise	□ - ─ 0 □ - ─ 0	+ 30 + 30
Color Cast	□•	+ 30
Out of Focus	□•	+ 30
Overexposure	□•	+ 30
	Apply	Back

Figure 5-128

<u>Step 2</u> Select the items that you want to diagnose and set the threshold (30 by default). See Table 5-40.

Parameter	Description				
	A horizontal, vertical or diagonal stripe that might appear in the				
Stripe	video because of device aging or electronic interruption. Such				
	stripe brings visual interruption.				
Noise	Video noises such as blurriness or quality reduction that is caused				
NOISE	by optical distortion or device problem during camera shooting.				
Color Cast	Variances in the normal proportions of RGB colors.				
	Blurry video is caused during camera shooting, transferring and				
Out of Focus	processing. Such condition is a common image quality reduction				
	problem and defined as out of focus.				
	The video brightness refers to the intensity of image pixel. The				
	range is between 0 (the darkest black) and 255 (the brightest				
Overexposure	white). If the brightness exceeds the threshold, the image is over				
	exposed.				
	The range is from 1 through 100. If the value after diagnosing is				
Threshold	higher than what you set, the system activates the alarm to the				
	corresponding diagnosing types such as stripe.				

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to save the settings.

The system returns to the **Diagnosis** interface.

<u>Step 4</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

Click Default to restore the default setting.

5.10.5 System Events

You can configure the alarm output for three types of system event (HDD, Network, and User). When there is an abnormal system event occurs, the system activates alarms in the way that you configure in this section.

5.10.5.1 Configuring HDD Event Settings

Step 1 Select Main Menu > ALARM > ABNORMITY > HDD.

The HDD interface is displayed. See Figure 5-129.

🔔 ALARM					l	LIVE	💄 🕞 🗸 🛄
ALARM INFO	HDD Ne	etwork Us	ser				
ALARM INPUT	Event Type	No HDD					
ALARM OUTPUT	Enable						
VIDEO DETECT							
> ABNORMALITY					10		
	Alarm Out	Setting		Latch	10	Sec.	
	🖌 Show Message	🛃 Alarm Upload		Send Email			
	🖌 Buzzer	🔽 Log					
	Voice Prompts	None					
					Ар	ply	Back

Figure 5-129

Ctop 2	Configura the	a atting and far th		Can Table F 11
<u>Step z</u>	Conligure the	settings for tr	ie noo eveni	. See Table 5-41.

Parameter	Description					
Event Type	In the Event Type list, select No HDD, HDD Error, or HDD No Space					
Lvent Type	as the event type.					
Enable	Enable or disable the HDD event detection function.					
	Click Setting to display setting interface.					
	General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices					
	connected to the selected output port.					
Alarm Out	• External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected					
	alarm box.					
	Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices					
	connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.					
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the					
Latch	external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300					
	seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.					
Show Message	Select the Show Message check box to enable a pop-up message in					
Show Wessage	your local host PC.					
	Select the Alarm Upload check box to enable the system to upload the					
Alarm Upload	alarm signal to the network (including alarm center) when an alarm					
	event occurs.					

Parameter	Description			
	Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an			
	email notification when an alarm event occurs.			
Send Email	D NOTE			
	To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main			
	Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.			
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.			
Log	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.			
Voice Dromote	Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a HDD			
Voice Prompts	alarm event.			

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

5.10.5.2 Configuring Network Event Settings

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > ABNORMITY > Network.

The **Network** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-130.

ALARM INFO HDD Network User ALARM OUTPUT Finable ALARM OUTPUT Alarm Out Setting Latch Ison Message Show Message Buzzer Ison Log Voice Prompts None Voice Prompts Ison Voice Prompts None Apply Back	🔔 ALARM					C	LIVE	1 E
ALARM OUTPUT CVDEO DETECT ABNORMALITY Alarm Out Control Channel Control Channel Contr	ALARM INFO	HDD	Network	User				
ABNORMALITY Alarm Out Setting Latch 10 Sec. Show Message Send Email Record Channel 123456789001112 Buzzer Log Post Record 10 Voice Prompts None	ALARM OUTPUT		Net Disconnectio	n 🔹				
Alarm Out Setting Latch 10 Sec. Show Message Send Email Record Channel 1234567891011112 Buzzer Log Post Record 10 Voice Prompts None *								
Voice Prompts None	ABNORMALITY	Show Messag	e		Send Email	10	Sec.	
		Buzzer	🔽 Log		Post Record	10	Sec.	
Apply Back		Voice Prompts	s None					
						Арр	ly	Back

Figure 5-130

Step 2	Configure the settings for the Network event. See Table	e 5-42.

Parameter	Description
	In the Event Type list, select Net Disconnection, IP Conflicted, or
Event Type	MAC Conflicted as the event type.
Enable	Enable or disable the Network event detection function.

Parameter	Description
	Click Setting to display setting interface.
	General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices
	connected to the selected output port.
Alarm Out	External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected
	alarm box.
	Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices
	connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the
Latch	external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300
	seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.
Show Message	Select the Show Message check box to enable a pop-up message in
Show Wessage	your local host PC.
	Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an
	email notification when an alarm event occurs.
Send Email	D NOTE
	To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main
	Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.
Log	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.
Voice Promote	Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a
Voice Prompts	network alarm event.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

5.10.5.3 Configuring User Event Settings

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > ABNORMITY > User.

The **User** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-131.

🖲 ALARM					L	/E 💄 🗣 🗸 🛱
ALARM INFO	HDD	Network	User			
ALARM INPUT	Event Type	Illegal Logi	n –	Attempt(s)	5	
ALARM OUTPUT	Enable			Lock Time	5 Mir	
VIDEO DETECT						
> ABNORMALITY	Alarm Out	Catting			10	Sec.
	Alarm Out	Setting		Latch		Sec.
	Voice Prom					
					Apply	Back

Figure 5-131

Step 2	Configure the	settings for th	e I Iser eve	nt. See Table 5-43.
	Configure the	settings for th	0301 0401	11.000 Table $3-73.$

Parameter	Description
Event Type	In the Event Type list, select Illegal Login.
	Enable the user error detection function.
Enable	If you do not enable this function, there will be no limit for wrong
LIIADIC	password entry and the account cannot be locked because of the
	wrong password.
Attempt(s)	Set the maximum number of allowable wrong password entries. The
Allempi(s)	account will be locked after your entries exceed the maximum number.
Lock Time	Set how long the account is locked for. The value ranges from 1 minute
LOCK TIME	to 60 minutes.
	Click Setting to display setting interface.
	General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices
	connected to the selected output port.
Alarm Out	External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected
	alarm box.
	Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices
	connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the
Latch	external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300
	seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.

Parameter	Description
	Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an
	email notification when an alarm event occurs.
Send Email	D NOTE
	To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main
	Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.
Log	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.
Voice Dromete	Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a user
Voice Prompts	account alarm event.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

5.11 AI Function

The faces are fuzzily processed to comply with relevant regulations.

Al module provides face detection, face recognition, and IVS functions. These functions take effect after they are configured and enabled. It adopts deep learning and can realize precision alarms.

- Face detection: The Device can analyze the faces captured by the camera and link the configured alarms.
- Face recognition: The Device can compare the captured faces with the face library and then link the configured alarms.
- IVS: The IVS function processes and analyzes the person and vehicle images to extract the key information to match with the preset rules. When the detected behaviors match with the rules, the system activates alarms. The IVS function can avoid wrong alarms by filtering the factors such as rains, light, and animals.

5.11.1 Face Detection

The Device can analyze the pictures captured by the camera to detect whether the faces are on the pictures. You can search and filter the recorded videos the faces and play back.

- Face detection function supports only four analog channels.
- Face detection and IVS function cannot be enabled at the same time for the same channel.

5.11.1.1 Configuring Face Detection Parameters

The alarms are generated according to the configured parameters.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > AI > PARAMETERS > FACE DETECTION.

The FACE DETECTION interface is displayed. See Figure 5-132.

🗳 AI				[LIVE	🔁 - 🛤
 € SMART SEA → □ PARAMETERS → > FACE DETECTION 	Channel Enable	1 *	Rule	Setting		
FACE RECOGNI	Period Alarm Out	Setting Setting	Latch	10	Sec.	
IVS	Show Message	 ✓ Alarm Upload 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 	🗌 Send Email	14 15 16		
	PTZ □ Tour ☑ Snapshot □ Video Matrix	Setting 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 Buzzer ✓Log		10 14 15 16 14 15 16	Sec.	
	Voice Prompts	None v				
	Default			Apr	alv B	ack

Figure 5-132

<u>Step 2</u> In the **Channel** list, select a channel that you want to configure face detection function, and then enable it.

Step 3	Configure the	parameters.	See	Table 5-44.
--------	---------------	-------------	-----	-------------

Parameter	Description
	Click Setting to draw areas to filter the target.
	You can configure two filtering targets (maximum size and
Rule	minimum size). When the target is smaller than the minimum size
	or larger than the maximum size, no alarms will be activated. The
	maximum size should be larger than the minimum size.
	Define a period during which the detection is active.
Period	For details, see "Setting Motion Detection Period" section in
	"5.10.4.1 Configuring Motion Detect Settings."
	Click Setting to display setting interface.
	General Alarm: Enable general alarm and select the alarm
	output port.
	Ext. Alarm: Connect the alarm box to the Device and then
Alarm Out	enable it.
	Wireless Siren: Connect the wireless gateway to the Device
	and then enable it. For details, see "5.12 IoT Function."
	When an alarm event occurs, the system links the peripheral alarm
	devices connected to the selected output port.
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after
Latch	the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds
	to 300 seconds. If you enter 0, there will be no delay.

Parameter	Description
Show Massaga	Select the Show Message check box to enable a pop-up alarm
Show Message	message in your local host PC.
	Select the Alarm Upload check box to enable the system to
	upload the alarm signal to the network (including alarm center)
	when an alarm event occurs.
Alarm Upload	NOTE NOTE
	Not all models support this function.
	• The corresponding parameters in the alarm center should be
	configured. For details, see "5.15.1.12 Configuring Alarm
	Center Settings."
	Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an
Send Email	email notification when an alarm event occurs.
Send Email	NOTE
	To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL .
	Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected
	channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.
Record Channel	The recording for intelligence event and auto recording function
	must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded
	Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."
	Click Setting to display the PTZ interface.
	Enable PTZ linkage actions, such as selecting the preset that you
	want to be called when an alarm event occurs.
PTZ	
	To use this function, the PTZ operations must be configured. For
	details, see "5.4 Controlling PTZ Cameras."
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording
Post Record	after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to
	300 seconds.
	Select the Tour check box to enable a tour of the selected
	channels.
	NOTE NOTE
Tour	• To use this function, the tour setting must be configured. For
	details, see "5.2.8 Configuring Tour Settings."
	• After the tour is ended, the live view screen returns to the view
	layout before tour started.
	Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected
	channel.
Snapshot	NOTE
	To use this function, make sure the snapshot function is enabled
	for Intel in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.

Parameter	Description
	Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event
	occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in
	"Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR > Extra Screen."
Video Matrix	NOTE NOTE
	 Not all models support this function.
	• The extra screen must be enabled to support this function.
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.
Log	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm
Log	log.
Voice Prompts	Select to enable audio broadcast in response to a face detection
	event.

<u>Step 4</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

5.11.1.2 Searching for and Playing Detected Faces

You can search the detected faces and play back.

```
<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > AI > SMART SEARCH > FACE DETECTION.
The FACE DETECTION interface is displayed. See Figure 5-133.
```

i Al				LIVE	
♠ SMART SEA →> FACE DETECTION	Channel	1			
FACE RECOGNI	Start Time	2018 - 10 - 22	00:00:00		
IVS	End Time	2018 - 10 - 22	23:59:59		
i≣ PARAMETERS ►	Gender	All			
🗈 DATABASE 🕨	Age	All			
	Glasses	All			
	Beard	All			
	Mask	All			
		Smart Search			

Figure 5-133

- <u>Step 2</u> Select the channel, enter the start time and end time, and set for the gender, age, glasses, beard, and mask.
- <u>Step 3</u> Click **Smart Search**. The results are displayed. See Figure 5-134.

Face Detect				
All Export Ba	ckup Lock Add Ma	rk		
Age:Young Gender:Female Face:Normal Glasses:Yes	Age:Middle-aged Gender:Female Face:Surprised Glasses:Yes	Age:Teenager Gender:Female Face:Confused Glasses:No	Age:Young Gender.Female Face:Disgusting Glasses:No	
2018-10-22 15:48:48	2018-10-22 16:11:04	2018-10-23 07:56:07	2018-10-23 07:56:17	
Age:Young Gender:Female Face:Normal Glasses:No	AgeYoung Gender:Female Face:Normal Glasses:No	AgeYoung Gender:Female Face:Laugh Glasses:Yes	Age:Young Gender.Female Face:Normal Glasses:No	
2018-10-23 07:56:43	2018-10-23 12:38:28	2018-10-23 12:39:20	2018-10-23 13:20:51	
Age:Young Gender:Male Face:Normal Glasses:Yes	Age:Young Gender:Male Face:Confused Glasses:Yes	Age:Young Gender:Male Face:Confused Glasses:Yes	Age:Young Gender.Female Face:Normal Glasses?Ves	
2018-10-23 14:45:06	2018-10-23 14:46:08	2018-10-23 14:47:05	2018-10-23 14:49:45	
Age:Young Gender:Female Face:Normal Glasses:No	Age:Young Gender:Male Face:Normal Glasses:No	Age:Young Gender:Male Face:Normal Glasses:No	Age:Young Gender.Female Face:Smile Glasses:No	
2018-10-23 15:19:40	2018-10-23 15:27:30	2018-10-23 15:29:42	2018-10-23 15:35:17	
Search Results:49	1/4	> >> 1	Go To	

Figure 5-134

<u>Step 4</u> Select the face that you want to play back.

The picture with registered information is displayed. See Figure 5-135.

Face Detect				
All Export Ba	ckup Lock Add Ma	rk		
Age:Young Gender:Female Face:Normal Glasses:Yes 2018-10-22 15:48:48	Age:Middle-aged Gender:Female Face:Surprised Glasses:Yes 2018-10-2216:11:04	Age:Teenager Gender:Female Face:Confused Glasses:No 2018-10-23 07:56:07	Age:Young Gender.Female Face:Disgusting Glasses:No 2018-10-23 07:56:17	
Age:Young Gender:Female Face:Normal Glasses:No	AgeYoung Gender:Female Face:Normal Glasses:No	Age:Young Gender.Female Face:Laugh Glasses:Yes	Age:Young Gender:Female Face:Normal Glasses:No	Age:Young Gender:Female Glasses:No Face:Normal Beard:No
2018-10-23 07:56:43 AgeYoung Gender:Male Face:Normal Glasses:Yes	2018-10-23 12:38:28 Age:Young Gender:Male Face:Confused Glasses:Yes	2018-10-23 12:39:20 Age:Young Gender:Male Face:Confused Glasses:Yes	2018-10-23 13:20:51 Age:Young Gender:Female Face:Normal Glasses:Yes	Mask:No
2018-10-23 14:45:06 Gender:Female Face:Normal Glasse::No	2018-10-23 14:46:08	2018-10-23 14:47:05 Age:Young Gender:Male Face:Normal Glasses:No	2018-10-23 14:49:45 AgeYoung Gender:Female Face:Smile Glasses:No 2018 10.23 15:25:17	
2018-10-23 15:19:40	2018-10-23 15:27:30	2018-10-23 15:29:42	2018-10-23 15:35:17	

Figure 5-135

Step 5 and then click to start playing back the recorded detected face snapshots.

Double-click on the playing interface to switch between full screen playing and thumbnail playing.

You can also do the following operations to the recorded files.

- To export the database file (.csv) to the external storage device, select files, click **Export**, and then select the save path.
- To back up the recorded files to the external storage device, select files, click **Backup**, select the save path and file type, and then click **Start**. See Figure 5-136.

File Backup					
Device Name Path 🔽 Video	sdb1(US XVR/2014	3-10-23/	 ▼ 14.92 GB/14 Browse File Type 	4.93 GB(Free/To DAV	otal) *
1 .√Cha.	Туре	Start Time	End Time	Size(KB)	
1 √2		2018-10-23 12:38:25	2018-10-23 12:38:44	4890	
6.48 MB(Space	Needed)				Start

Figure 5-136

- To lock the files to make it unable to be overwritten, select the files, and then click **Lock**.
- To add a mark to the file, select the files and then click Add Mark.

5.11.2 Face Recognition

Face recognition applies to AI preview mode and smart search.

- Al preview mode: Supports comparing the detected faces with the face library, and display the comparison results.
- Smart search: Supports faces searching by faces attributes or portraits.

- Face recognition function supports only four analog channels.
- Face Recognition cannot be enabled at the same time with and IVS function for the same channel.
- Before enabling face recognition function for a channel, the face detection must be enabled first for this channel.

5.11.2.1 Face Library Management

You should create a face library for comparing the detected faces and the faces in the library. The Device supports creating maximum 20 libraries and registering 100,000 faces.

5.11.2.1.1 Creating a Face Library

```
<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > AI > DATABASE > FACE LIBRARY.
```

The FACE LIBRARY interface is displayed. See Figure 5-137.

🗳 AI				LIVE 🔔 💽 🚽 🚟
🚯 SMART SEA 🕨				
≣ PARAMETERS ▶	o FacelikraniNama	Degister Folluren	Freesan Ctatus	Edit Dataila
🗈 DATABASE 🗸	0 Face Library Name	Register Failure p	Errorpe Status	edit Details
> FACE LIBRARY				
	Modeling Refresh		Add	Del

Figure 5-137



The Add interface is displayed. See Figure 5-138.

Add			
Face Library Name 📘			
	Save	Back	

Figure 5-138

<u>Step 3</u> Enter the face library name, and then click **Save**. The created library is displayed. See Figure 5-139.

Click to modify library name.

- Click to view the library details and add new faces to the library. For details, see "5.11.2.1.2 Adding Face Pictures."
- Select the library, and then click **Modeling**. The system will extract the attributes of face pictures in the library for the future comparison.
- Select the library, and then click **Del** to delete the library.

🚑 AI							LIVE		10
🚯 SMART SEA 🕨									
≣ PARAMETERS ►			Desister	E-ilium a	F		E alta	Dataila	
🗈 DATABASE 🚽	2 Fa	ace Library Name	Register 5175	Failure p 4	Error pe 0	Status Arming	Edit /	Details	
> FACE LIBRARY	2	2	0	+ 0	0	Disarm	1	D) D)	
	Modeling	Refresh				Add		Del	
	Modeling	Kellesti				Auu			

Figure 5-139

5.11.2.1.2 Adding Face Pictures

You can add face pictures to the existing libraries one by one or by batch, or add from the detected faces.

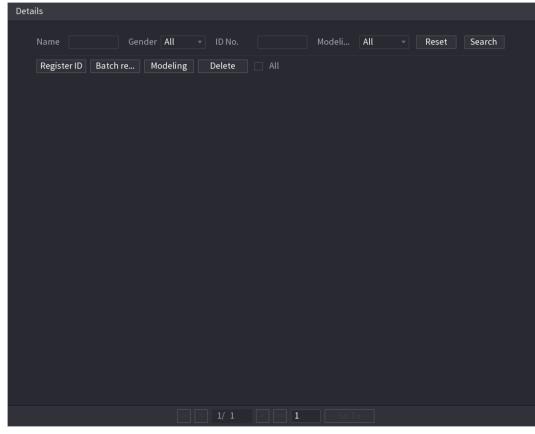
To add face pictures one by one or by batch, you need to get the pictures from the USB storage device. The picture size should be smaller than 256K with resolution between 200×200–6000×5000.

Adding One Face Picture

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > AI > DATABASE > FACE LIBRARY.

The FACE LIBRARY interface is displayed. See Figure 5-139.

<u>Step 2</u> Click of the library that you want to configure.



The **Details** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-140.

Figure 5-140

Step 3 Click Register ID.

The **Register ID** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-141.

Register ID			
	Name		
	Gender	🗿 Male	\bigcirc Female
	Birthday	Year Month	
•	Address		
	ID Type		
	ID No.		
	Country		
		Reset	Cancel

Figure 5-141

<u>Step 4</u> Click **L** to add a face picture.

The **Browse** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-142.

Brows	e					
	Device Name Total Space Free Space	sdb1(USB USB) 14.93 GB 14.92 GB	• Refresh			
	Address					
	Name			Size	Туре	Delete
	🗅 XVR				Folder	
					ОК	Back

Figure 5-142

Step 5 Select a face picture and enter the registration information. See Figure 5-143.

Register ID			
*847	Name	margie	
	Gender	🔿 Male	💿 Female
	Birthday	1996 03	07
	Address	TTYUI	
	ID Type	Passport	
<i>w</i>	ID No.	1111111111111	111555555
33 I.	Country	United States	
Add Mo	ore OK	Reset	Cancel

Figure 5-143

Step 6 Click OK.

The system prompts the registration is successful.

<u>Step 7</u> On the **Details** interface, click **Search**.

The system prompts modeling is successful. See Figure 5-144.

If the system prompts the message indicating modeling is in process, wait a while and then click **Search** again. If modeling is failed, the registered face picture cannot be used for face recognition.

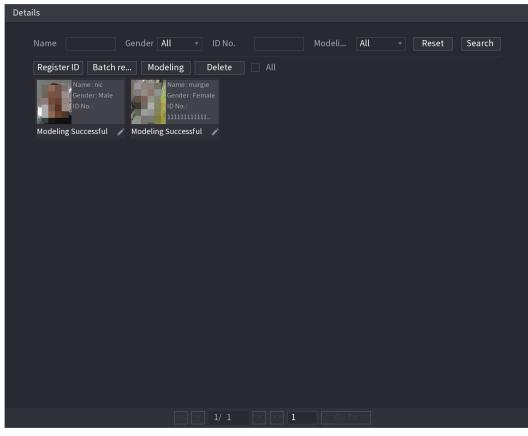


Figure 5-144

Adding Face Pictures in Batch

Step 1 Give a name to the face picture by referring to	to Table 5-45.
--	----------------

Naming format	Description
Name	Enter the name.
Gender	Enter 1 or 2. 1 represents male, and 2 represents female.
Birthday	Enter numbers in the format of yyyy-mm-dd.
Country	Enter the abbreviation of country. For example, CN for China.
	1 represents ID card; 2 represents passport; 3 represents military
ID Type	officer password.
ID No.	Enter the ID number.
Address	Enter the address.

Table 5-45

<u>Step 2</u> On the **Details** interface, click **Batch register**.

The Batch register interface is displayed. See Figure 5-145.

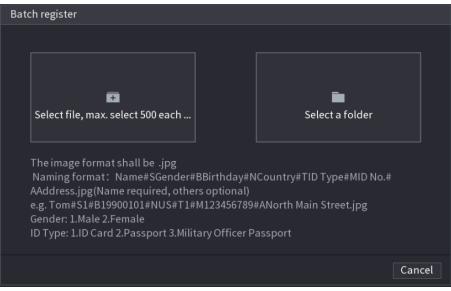


Figure 5-145

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Select file, max select 500 each time** or **Select a folder** to import face pictures. <u>Step 4</u> Click **OK** to complete batch registration.

Adding the Detected Faces

<u>Step 1</u> Right-click on the live view screen, and then select **Preview Mode > AI Mode**. The AI Mode live view screen is displayed. See Figure 5-146.

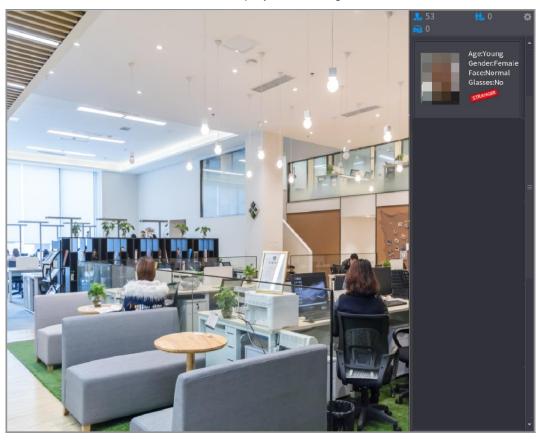


Figure 5-146

<u>Step 2</u> Double-click the detected face snapshot that you want to add. The snapshot playing back interface is displayed. See Figure 5-147.

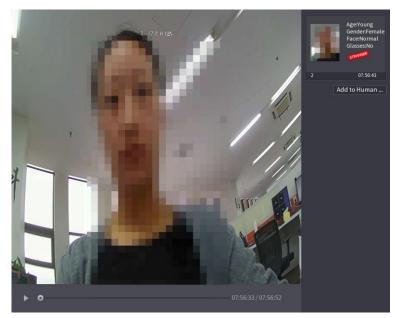


Figure 5-147



			~	1: <7°C H:04%	-				Age:Young Gender:Female Face:Normal Glasses:No stranicea
	Registe	er ID							
March 1			Name			Gender	💿 Male 🔾	Female	07:56:43
Sec. 1			Birthday	Year 🔻 👻		Country			to Human
			State			Address			
	line and		ID Type			ID No.			
	2		Face Library N	Registered No.	Failure pe	opl Error	people		
				5175					
1									
1									
No.									
							ОК	Cancel	
					103 .55				
	AN A						TK_		
▶ 0						07:56 <u>:33</u>	3 / 07:56:52		

Figure 5-148

<u>Step 4</u> Select the face library and enter the ID information. <u>Step 5</u> Click **OK** to complete registration.

5.11.2.2 Face Recognition Configuration

You can compare the detected faces with the faces in the library to judge if the detected face belongs to the library. The comparison result will be displayed on the AI mode live view screen and smart search interface, and link the alarms.

					5		
💝 AI						LIVE	
🔞 SMART SEA 🕨	Channel	1					
≣ PARAMETERS	Enable						
FACE DETECTION							
FACE RECOGNI IVS	Period Target Face Data	Setting Setting					
■ DATABASE	Stranger Mode						
	0 Enable	Face Library Name	Similarity	Edit	Trigger	Delete	
	Default					Apply	Back

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > AI > PARAMETERS > FACE RECOGNITION.

The FACE RECOGNITION interface is displayed. See Figure 5-149.

Figure 5-149

- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Channel** list, select a channel that you want to configure face recognition function, and then enable it.
- Step 3 Set the Period. For details, see "5.10.4.1 Configuring Motion Detect Settings."
- <u>Step 4</u> Set the **Target Face Database**.
 - Click Setting.
 The Face Library interface is displayed. See Figure 5-150.

Fa	ce Lib	orary				
	2		Face Library Name	Registered No.	Failure people number	Error people number
				5175		
	2		2			
						OK Cancel

Figure 5-150

- 2) Select one or multiple face libraries.
- 3) Click OK.

The selected face library is listed. See Figure 5-151.

🖉 AI						LIVE	
 ➡ SMART SEA → ■ PARAMETERS → FACE DETECTION 	Channel Enable	2					
› FACE RECOGNI IVS	Period Target Face Data Stranger Mode	Setting Setting					
B) DATABASE →		Face Library Name 2 1	Similarity 80 80	Edit	Trigger \$	Delete	
	Default					Apply	Back

Figure 5-151

<u>Step 5</u> Configure the added face library.

• Click for modify the similarity. The lower the number is, the easier the alarm linkage will trigger.

- Click to delete the face library.
- Click to set the alarm linkage. See Figure 5-152. For details, see Table 5-44. After setting is completed, click **OK**.

Trigger					
Alarm Out	Setting		Latch	10	Sec.
Show Message	🗹 Alarm Upload		🗌 Send Email		
🛃 Record Channel					
PTZ	Setting		Post Record	10	Sec.
🗌 Tour					
Snapshot					
Video Matrix	Buzzer	✓ Log			
Voice Prompts	None				
				OK	Back

Figure 5-152

<u>Step 6</u> (Optional) Enable the **Stranger Mode**.

- 1) Enable the Stranger mode (). When the detected faces do not belong to the face library, the system remarks the face as "Stranger."
- 2) Click **Setting** to set the alarm linkage. For details, see Table 5-44.
- 3) After setting is completed, click **OK**.

<u>Step 7</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

After the face recognition function is enabled, right-click on the live view screen, and then select **Preview Mode > AI Mode**. The AI mode live view screen is displayed. See Figure 5-153.

- If the detected face belongs to the enabled face library, the similarity result is displayed.
- If the detected face does not belong to the enabled face library, the face will be remarked as "Stranger."

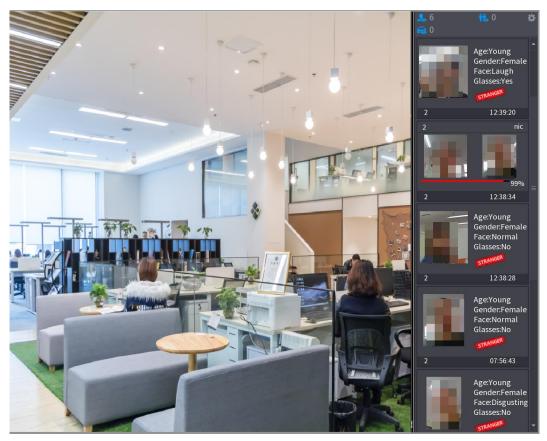


Figure 5-153

5.11.2.3 Smart Search for Face Recognition

You can compare the detected faces with the face library and play back.

- Search by attributes: Search the face library by the face attributes.
- Search by image: Search the face library by uploading face pictures.

5.11.2.3.1 Searching by Attributes

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > AI > SMART SEARCH > FACE RECOGNITION > Search by Attributes.

The Search by Attributes interface is displayed. See Figure 5-154.

i Al		LIVE 🛛 🛓 💽 🕫
🍙 SMART SEA 👻	Search by Attri	Search by Image
FACE DETECTION	Channel	1 *
> FACE RECOGNI	Start Time	2018 -10 -22 00 :00 :00
i≣ PARAMETERS ►	End Time	2018 - 10 - 22 23 : 59 : 59
E∋ DATABASE ►	Gender	All
L	Age	All 🔹
	Glasses	All
	Beard	All 👻
	Mask	All
	Similarity	80 %
		Smart Search

Figure 5-154

- <u>Step 2</u> Select the channel and set the parameters such as start time, end time, gender, age, glasses, beard, mask, and similarity according to your requirement.
- Step 3 Click Smart Search.

The search result is displayed. See Figure 5-155.

Face Recognition					
All Export Backup	Lock Add Mark				
2 99%					
2018-10-23 12:38:34					
					Face Properties
					Person Details
Search Results:1	<< < 1/1	> >>	1	ão To	

Figure 5-155

- <u>Step 4</u> Click the picture that you want to play back.
 - The picture with registered information is displayed. See Figure 5-156.

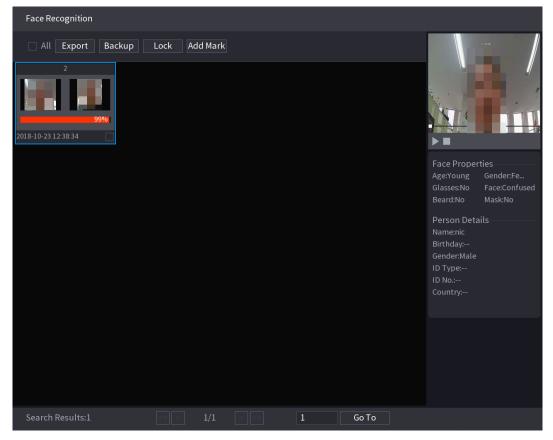


Figure 5-156

<u>Step 5</u> Click to play back the recorded video.

Double-click on the playing interface to switch between full screen playing and thumbnail playing.

You can also do the following operations to the recorded files.

- To export the database file (.csv) to the external storage device, select files, click **Export**, and then select the save path.
- To back up the recorded files to the external storage device, select files, click **Backup**, select the save path and file type, and then click **Start**. See Figure 5-136.

File Backup						
Device Name sdb1(USB USB) Path XVR/2018-10-23/				 ▼ 14.92 GB/14.93 GB(Free/Total) Browse 		
🔽 Video	🔲 Pictu	re	File Type	DAV		
1 √ Cha. 1 √ 2	Type R	Start Time 2018-10-23 12:38:25	End Time 2018-10-23 12:38:44	Size(KB) 4 4890		
6.48 MB(Space	Needed)				Start	

Figure 5-157

- To lock the files to make it unable to be overwritten, select the files, and then click **Lock**.
- To add a mark to the file, select the files and then click Add Mark.

5.11.2.3.2 Search by Image

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > AI > SMART SEARCH > FACE RECOGNITION > Search by Image.

The Search by Image interface is displayed. See Figure 5-158.

💝 AI				
🗞 SMART SEA 👻	Search by Attri Sea	arch by Image		
FACE DETECTION	Face Library	Local Upload *Max. upload		Clear 0/0
> FACE RECOGNI				
IVS	•			•
≣ PARAMETERS ►				
🗈 DATABASE 🕨	Channel	1 *		
	Start Time	2018-10-22 00:00:00		
	End Time	2018-10-22 23:59:59		
	Similarity	80	% (50%~100%)	
		Smart Search		

Figure 5-158

<u>Step 2</u> Upload face pictures from **Face Library** or **Local Upload**.

Maximum 30 pictures can be uploaded at one time, and the system support searching 8 pictures at one time.

- Face Library
- 1) Click Face Library.

The Face Library interface is displayed. See Figure 5-159.

Face Library							
Face L 2	2 🔻 Name	Gender All	. ▼ IDI	No.		Reset	Search
	Name:nic Gender:Male ID No.:						
		1/1			CoTo		Cours
		1/1		1	Go To		Save

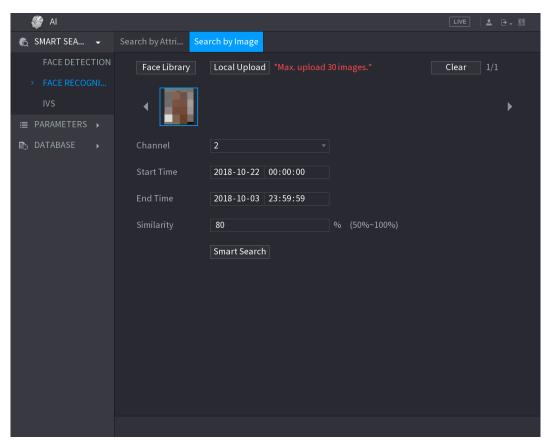
Figure 5-159

- 2) Set the searching parameters by selecting the face library and gender, and entering name and ID No. according to your actual requirement.
- Click Search to display the results that satisfy the requirement.
 NOTE

Click Reset to clear the searching parameters.

4) Select the picture and then click Save.

The picture is displayed on the Search by Image interface. See Figure 5-160.





- Local Upload Plug the USB storage device (with face pictures) to the Device, and then click
 Local Upload. Then select the picture from the USB storage device, and then click
 OK. The selected face pictures are uploaded.
- <u>Step 3</u> After the face pictures are uploaded, continue to configure other parameters (channel, start time, end time, and similarity).
- Step 4 Click Smart Search.

The searching results are displayed. See Figure 5-161.

Face Recognition				
All Add Mark	Lock Backup			
99%	99%	99%	98%	
2018-10-23 12:38:34	2018-10-23 07:56:43	2018-10-23 07:56:07	2018-10-23 17:08:46	
98%	97%	96%		Face Properties
2018-10-23 07:56:17	2018-10-23 17:05:36	2018-10-23 17:09:18		
Search Results:7	<< 1/1	>>>> 1 Go To		

Figure 5-161

<u>Step 5</u> Select the face picture that you want to play back. See Figure 5-162.

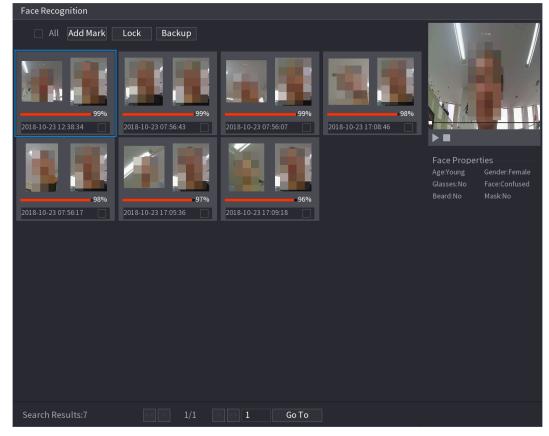


Figure 5-162

<u>Step 6</u> Click to play back the recorded video.

Double-click on the playing interface to switch between full screen playing and thumbnail playing.

You can also do the following operations to the recorded files.

- To add a mark to the file, select the files and then click Add Mark.
- To lock the files to make it unable to be overwritten, select the files, and then click Lock.
- To back up the recorded files to the external storage device, select files, click **Backup**, select the save path and file type, and then click **Start**. See Figure 5-163.

File	e Backu	р						
	Device Name sdb1(USB USB) Path XVR/2018-10-23/				14.92 GB/14.93 GB(Free/Total) Browse			
	🔽 Vi	deo	📄 Pictu	re		File Type	DAV	
	1	⊽ Cha	. Туре	Start Time	End Tim	e	Size(KB)	
		J 2		2018-10-23 12:38:25	2018-10-	23 12:38:44	4890	
	6.48 M	B(Space N	leeded)					Start

Figure 5-163

5.11.3 Configuring IVS Function

The IVS function processes and analyzes the images to extract the key information to match with the preset rules. When the detected behaviors match with the rules, the system activates alarms.

D NOTE

The IVS function cannot be enabled at the same time with Face Detection and Face Recognition function for the same channel.

5.11.3.1 Configuring IVS Parameters

The alarms are generated according to the configured parameters.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > AI > PARAMETERS > IVS.

The IVS interface is displayed. See Figure 5-164.

i Al						LIVE	99 - • •
🚯 SMART SEA 🕨	Channel	1					
i≣ PARAMETERS 👻							
FACE DETECTION	0 Enable	Name	Туре	Draw	Trigger	Delete	Р
FACE RECOGNI							
> IVS							
₽ ₃ DATABASE →							
							×
						Add	
					A	.pply i	Back

Figure 5-164

- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Channel** list, select the channel number that you want to configure the IVS function.
- Step 3 Click Add.

One line of rule is displayed. See Figure 5-165.

j⊛j ivs							LIVE	1
SMART SEARCH	Channe		1					
> INTELL SETTING								
	1	Enable	Name	Туре	Draw	Trigger	Delete	Р
			Rule1	Tripwire		\$		
							A	dd
							Apply	Back

Figure 5-165

<u>Step 4</u> Configure the parameters for the rule that you selected.

<u>Step 5</u> Select the check box of the rule to enable it.

<u>Step 6</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

5.11.3.1.1 Configuring Tripwire Rules

When the target object crosses the tripwire in the defined direction, the system activates alarms.

- The tripwire can be configured as a straight line or broken line.
- Supports detecting one-way or two-way tripwire crossing.
- Supports multiple tripwires in the same scenario to meet the complexity.
- Supports size filtering for target.

<u>Step 1</u> On the rule line that you added, in the **Type** list, select **Tripwire**. See Figure 5-166.

👺 AI							LIVE	
🏠 SMART SEA 🕨	Channe		2					
≣ PARAMETERS 👻								
FACE DETECTION	1	Enable	Name	Туре	Draw	Trigger	Delete	Р
FACE RECOGNI			Rule1	Tripwire		\$		
> IVS								
🗈 DATABASE 🕨								
							Ado	ł
							Apply	Back

Figure 5-166

Step 2 Draw a tripwire.

- 1) In the **Channel** list, select the channel that you want to configure the rules for.
- 2) Click

The monitoring screen to configure the tripwire rules is displayed. See Figure 5-167.

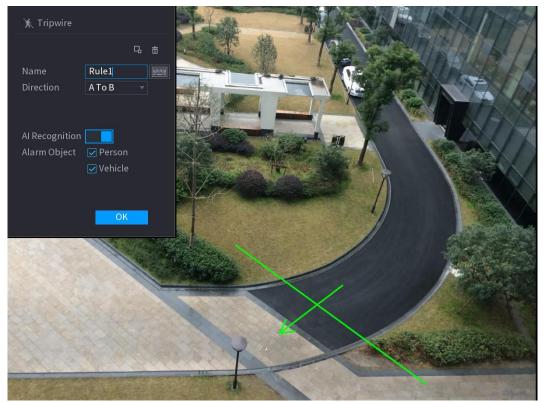


Figure 5-167

3) Configure the settings for the parameters of drawing rules. See Table 5-46.

Parameter	Description
Name	Enter the customized rule name.
Direction	Set the direction of the tripwire. You can choose A to B (left to
Direction	right), B to A (right to left), and Both .
Filtering Target	Click to draw areas to filter the target. You can configure two filtering targets (maximum size and minimum size). When the target that is crossing the tripwire is
	smaller than the minimum size or larger than the maximum size, no alarms will be activated. The maximum size should be larger than the minimum size.
AI Recognition	Enable the AI Recognition function (ED). By default, Person and Vehicle are selected for alarm object.

Table 5-46

- 4) Drag to draw a tripwire. The tripwire can be a straight line, broken line or polygon.
- 5) Click **OK** to save the settings.

Step 3 Click to set the actions to be triggered.

The Trigger interface is displayed. See Figure 5-168.

Trigger				
Period	Setting			
Alarm Out	Setting	Latch	10	Sec.
Show Message	🗹 Alarm Upload	🗌 Send Email		
🔽 Record Channel				
PTZ	Setting	Post Record	10	Sec.
🗌 Tour				
🗌 Snapshot				
📃 Video Matrix	🗌 Buzzer 🛛 🔽 Log			
Voice Prompts	None 🔻			
			ОК	Back

Figure 5-168

Sten 4	Configure the	triggering	narameters	See	Table 5-47
<u> 0160 4</u>	Configure the	unggening	parameters.	066	

Parameter	Description				
	Define a period during which the detection is active.				
Period	For details, see "Setting Motion Detection Period" section in				
	"5.10.4.1 Configuring Motion Detect Settings."				
	Click Setting to display setting interface.				
	General Alarm: Enable general alarm and select the alarm				
	output port.				
	• Ext. Alarm: Connect the alarm box to the Device and then				
Alarm Out	enable it.				
	Wireless Siren: Connect the wireless gateway to the Device				
	and then enable it. For details, see "5.12 IoT Function."				
	When an alarm event occurs, the system links the peripheral alarm				
	devices connected to the selected output port.				
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after				
Latch	the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds				
	to 300 seconds. If you enter 0, there will be no delay.				
Show Message	Select the Show Message check box to enable a pop-up alarm				
Show message	message in your local host PC.				
	Select the Alarm Upload check box to enable the system to				
	upload the alarm signal to the network (including alarm center)				
	when an alarm event occurs.				
Alarm Upload	NOTE NOTE				
	 Not all models support this function. 				
	• The corresponding parameters in the alarm center should be				
	configured. For details, see "5.15.1.12 Configuring Alarm				
	Center Settings."				

To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL. Record Channel Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs. Image: the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs. Image: the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs. Image: the channel selection of the selected channel. PTZ Click Setting to display the PTZ interface. Enable PTZ linkage actions, such as selecting the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs. Image: the the tot the channel selected when an alarm event occurs. Image: the tot the selected when an alarm event occurs. Image: the tot the selected of the tot the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs. Image: the tot the selected of the tot the selected of the selected of the tot the tot the selected of the tot the tot the selected of the the tot the selected of the tot. Tour Select the tour is ended, the live view screen returns to the view layout before tour started. Snapshot Select the snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel. NOTE To use this function, make sure the snapshot function is enabled for Intel in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot. Select the check	Parameter	Description
Send Email Imain Menu > NOTE To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs. Image: Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs. Image: Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs. Image: Select the Channel Select Set Select Set Select Set Set Select Set Set Set Set Set Set Set Set Set Se		Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an
To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL. Record Channel Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs. Image: The recording for intelligence event and auto recording function must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control." Click Setting to display the PTZ interface. Enable PTZ linkage actions, such as selecting the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs. Image: NOTE To use this function, the PTZ operations must be configured. For details, see "5.4 Controlling PTZ Cameras." Post Record Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds. Tour Select the Tour check box to enable a tour of the selected channels. Image: NOTE To use this function, the tour setting must be configured. For details, see "5.2.8 Configuring Tour Settings." After the tour is ended, the live view screen returns to the view layout before tour started. Shapshot Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel. NOTE To use this function, make sure the snapshot function is enabled for Intel in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot. Select the check box to enable the function. Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.		email notification when an alarm event occurs.
Main Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL. Record Channel Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs. Image: NoTE The recording for intelligence event and auto recording function must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control." PTZ Click Setting to display the PTZ interface. Enable PTZ linkage actions, such as selecting the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs. Image: NOTE To use this function, the PTZ operations must be configured. For details, see "5.4 Controlling PTZ Cameras." Post Record Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds. Select the Tour check box to enable a tour of the selected channels. Image: NOTE Tour • To use this function, the tour setting must be configured. For details, see "5.2.8 Configuring Tour Settings." * After the tour is ended, the live view screen returns to the view layout before tour started. Snapshot Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel. Image: NOTE To use this function, make sure the snapshot function is enabled for Intel in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot. Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configure	Send Email	D NOTE
Record Channel Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs. Image: The recording for intelligence event and auto recording function must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control." PTZ Click Setting to display the PTZ interface. Enable PTZ linkage actions, such as selecting the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs. Image: To use this function, the PTZ operations must be configured. For details, see "5.4 Controlling PTZ Cameras." Post Record Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds. Select the Tour check box to enable a tour of the selected channels. Image: Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel. Tour • To use this function, the tour setting must be configured. For details, see "5.2.8 Configuring Tour Settings." • After the tour is ended, the live view screen returns to the view layout before tour started. Snapshot Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel. Video Matrix NOTE • Note Note • After the tour is ended, the live view screen returns to the view layout before tour started. Snapshot Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.		To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in
Record Channel channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs. Image: Note the network of the second provided the second provided the second provided the network of the second provided the network of the second provided the second prote second provided the second provided the		Main Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.
Record Channel Image: Construction of the second provided prectable proprovided prectable provided provided prectable provided		Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected
Record Channel The recording for intelligence event and auto recording function must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control." PTZ Click Setting to display the PTZ interface. Enable PTZ linkage actions, such as selecting the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs. Image: NoTE To use this function, the PTZ operations must be configured. For details, see "5.4 Controlling PTZ Cameras." Post Record Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds. Select the Tour check box to enable a tour of the selected channels. Image: NoTE To use this function, the tour setting must be configured. For details, see "5.2.8 Configuring Tour Settings." After the tour is ended, the live view screen returns to the view layout before tour started. Snapshot Image: NoTE NOTE To use this function, make sure the snapshot function is enabled for Intel in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot. Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR > Extra Screen." Video Matrix Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. <		channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.
The recording for intelligence event and auto recording function must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control." Click Setting to display the PTZ interface. Enable PTZ linkage actions, such as selecting the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs. NOTE To use this function, the PTZ operations must be configured. For details, see "5.4 Controlling PTZ Cameras." Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds. Set alength of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds. Tour Select the Tour check box to enable a tour of the selected channels. NOTE To use this function, the tour setting must be configured. For details, see "5.2.8 Configuring Tour Settings." • Tour be fore tour started. Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel. NOTE To use this function, make sure the snapshot function is enabled for Intel in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot. Select the check box to enable the function. Select the check box to enable the settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR > Extra Screen." Video Matrix Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at th	Record Channel	NOTE NOTE
Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control." PTZ Click Setting to display the PTZ interface. Enable PTZ linkage actions, such as selecting the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs. Image: Click Setting to be called when an alarm event occurs. PTZ To use this function, the PTZ operations must be configured. For details, see "5.4 Controlling PTZ Cameras." Post Record Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds. Tour Select the Tour check box to enable a tour of the selected channels. Image: NOTE NOTE To use this function, the tour setting must be configured. For details, see "5.2.8 Configuring Tour Settings." After the tour is ended, the live view screen returns to the view layout before tour started. Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel. Snapshot Select the check box to enable the snapshot function is enabled for Intel in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot. Video Matrix Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Video Matrix Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Dev	Record Channel	The recording for intelligence event and auto recording function
PTZ Click Setting to display the PTZ interface. Enable PTZ linkage actions, such as selecting the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs. Image: Setting to be called when an alarm event occurs. PTZ NOTE To use this function, the PTZ operations must be configured. For details, see "5.4 Controlling PTZ Cameras." Post Record Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds. Four Select the Tour check box to enable a tour of the selected channels. Image: NOTE NOTE To use this function, the tour setting must be configured. For details, see "5.2.8 Configuring Tour Settings." After the tour is ended, the live view screen returns to the view layout before tour started. Salect the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel. Image: NOTE To use this function, make sure the snapshot function is enabled for Intel in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot. Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR > Extra Screen." Video Matrix Note Notall models support this function.		must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded
PTZ Enable PTZ linkage actions, such as selecting the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs. Image: NoTE To use this function, the PTZ operations must be configured. For details, see "5.4 Controlling PTZ Cameras." Post Record Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds. Four Select the Tour check box to enable a tour of the selected channels. Image: NOTE NOTE To use this function, the tour setting must be configured. For details, see "5.2.8 Configuring Tour Settings." Tour • After the tour is ended, the live view screen returns to the view layout before tour started. Snapshot Image: NOTE Snapshot Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel. Image: NOTE To use this function, make sure the snapshot function is enabled for Intel in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot. Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR > Extra Screen." Video Matrix Image: Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Sugar Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.		Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."
PTZ want to be called when an alarm event occurs. Image: NoTE To use this function, the PTZ operations must be configured. For details, see "5.4 Controlling PTZ Cameras." Post Record Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds. Tour Select the Tour check box to enable a tour of the selected channels. Image: NOTE NOTE Tour To use this function, the tour setting must be configured. For details, see "5.2.8 Configuring Tour Settings." After the tour is ended, the live view screen returns to the view layout before tour started. Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel. Image: NOTE Snapshot Select the Check box to enable the settings configured in "Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot. Video Matrix Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR > Extra Screen." Video Matrix Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log. Voice Prompts Select to enable audio broadcast in response to a face detection		Click Setting to display the PTZ interface.
PTZ Image: Note To use this function, the PTZ operations must be configured. For details, see "5.4 Controlling PTZ Cameras." Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds. Four after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds. Select the Tour check box to enable a tour of the selected channels. Image: NoTE Tour • To use this function, the tour setting must be configured. For details, see "5.2.8 Configuring Tour Settings." • After the tour is ended, the live view screen returns to the view layout before tour started. Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel. Image: NoTE Snapshot Image: NoTE Video Matrix Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR > Extra Screen." Image: NoTE • Not all models support this function. • The extra screen must be enabled to support this function. Buzzer Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log. Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.		Enable PTZ linkage actions, such as selecting the preset that you
Image: Note in the i		want to be called when an alarm event occurs.
To use this function, the PTZ operations must be configured. For details, see "5.4 Controlling PTZ Cameras." Post Record Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds. Tour Select the Tour check box to enable a tour of the selected channels. Image: NOTE NOTE Tour To use this function, the tour setting must be configured. For details, see "5.2.8 Configuring Tour Settings." After the tour is ended, the live view screen returns to the view layout before tour started. Snapshot Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel. NOTE To use this function, make sure the snapshot function is enabled for Intel in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot. Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR > Extra Screen." Video Matrix NOTE NOTE NOTE NOTE NOTE NOTE NOTE NOTE NOTE Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR > Extra Screen." NOTE Not all models support this function. The extra scree	PTZ	
details, see "5.4 Controlling PTZ Cameras." Post Record Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds. Four after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to a solo seconds. Select the Tour check box to enable a tour of the selected channels. Tour Select the Tour check box to enable a tour of the selected channels. Image: NOTE To use this function, the tour setting must be configured. For details, see "5.2.8 Configuring Tour Settings." After the tour is ended, the live view screen returns to the view layout before tour started. Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel. Snapshot Image: NOTE NOTE To use this function, make sure the snapshot function is enabled for Intel in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot. Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR > Extra Screen." Video Matrix NOTE Not all models support this function. The extra screen must be enabled to support this function. Buzzer Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Log Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log. Voice Promots Select to enable audio broadcast in response to a face		
Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds. Select the Tour check box to enable a tour of the selected channels. Image: Tour NOTE Tour To use this function, the tour setting must be configured. For details, see "5.2.8 Configuring Tour Settings." After the tour is ended, the live view screen returns to the view layout before tour started. Snapshot Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel. NOTE NOTE State the in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot. Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR > Extra Screen." NOTE NOTE NOTE NOTE Not all models support this function. NoTE NoTE Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR > Extra Screen." NOTE NOTE NOTE Not all models support this function. The extra screen must be enabled to support this function. Buzzer Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log. Voice Prompts Select to enable audio br		
Post Record after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds. Select the Tour check box to enable a tour of the selected channels. NOTE Tour • To use this function, the tour setting must be configured. For details, see "5.2.8 Configuring Tour Settings." • After the tour is ended, the live view screen returns to the view layout before tour started. Snapshot Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel. Snapshot NOTE Video Matrix Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR > Extra Screen." Video Matrix Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log. Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.		
300 seconds. Select the Tour check box to enable a tour of the selected channels. Image: Select the Tour check box to enable a tour of the selected channels. Tour • To use this function, the tour setting must be configured. For details, see "5.2.8 Configuring Tour Settings." • After the tour is ended, the live view screen returns to the view layout before tour started. Snapshot Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel. Image: NOTE To use this function, make sure the snapshot function is enabled for Intel in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot. Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR > Extra Screen." Video Matrix Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Buzzer Select the check box to enable the provide this function. • The extra screen must be enabled to support this function. Log Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log. Select to enable audio broadcast in response to a face detection	Post Record	
Tour channels. Image: Tour To use this function, the tour setting must be configured. For details, see "5.2.8 Configuring Tour Settings." • After the tour is ended, the live view screen returns to the view layout before tour started. Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel. Snapshot Image: NOTE To use this function, make sure the snapshot function is enabled for Intel in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot. Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR > Extra Screen." Video Matrix • Not all models support this function. Buzzer Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log. Voice Prompts Select to enable audio broadcast in response to a face detection		-
Tour Image: Note in the image: Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.		Select the Tour check box to enable a tour of the selected
Tour • To use this function, the tour setting must be configured. For details, see "5.2.8 Configuring Tour Settings." • After the tour is ended, the live view screen returns to the view layout before tour started. Snapshot Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel. NOTE To use this function, make sure the snapshot function is enabled for Intel in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot. Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR > Extra Screen." Video Matrix NOTE NOTE NOTE NOTE NOTE Video Matrix Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR > Extra Screen." NOTE NOTE NOTE Not all models support this function. Buzzer Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Log Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log. Voice Prompts Select to enable audio broadcast in response to a face detection		channels.
Tour • To use this function, the tour setting must be configured. For details, see "5.2.8 Configuring Tour Settings." • After the tour is ended, the live view screen returns to the view layout before tour started. Snapshot Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel. NOTE To use this function, make sure the snapshot function is enabled for Intel in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot. Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR > Extra Screen." Video Matrix NOTE NOTE NOTE NOTE NOTE Video Matrix Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR > Extra Screen." NOTE NOTE NOTE Not all models support this function. Buzzer Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Log Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log. Voice Prompts Select to enable audio broadcast in response to a face detection		
details, see "5.2.8 Configuring Tour Settings." After the tour is ended, the live view screen returns to the view layout before tour started. Snapshot Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel. Image: NoTE To use this function, make sure the snapshot function is enabled for Intel in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot. Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR > Extra Screen." Video Matrix NOTE Buzzer Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Log Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log. Voice Prompts Select to enable audio broadcast in response to a face detection	Tour	
Iayout before tour started. Snapshot Snapshot Image: Single started in the selected channel. Image: Single started in the selected in the selected channel. Image: Single started in the selected in		
Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel. Snapshot Image: Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel. Image: Select the Snapshot Check box to take a snapshot function is enabled for Intel in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot. Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR > Extra Screen." Image: NOTE Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Log Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log. Voice Prompts Select to enable audio broadcast in response to a face detection		• After the tour is ended, the live view screen returns to the view
Snapshot channel. Image: Note To use this function, make sure the snapshot function is enabled for Intel in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot. Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR > Extra Screen." Video Matrix Image: Note all models support this function. Buzzer Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Log Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log. Voice Prompts Select to enable audio broadcast in response to a face detection		layout before tour started.
Snapshot Image: NoTE To use this function, make sure the snapshot function is enabled for Intel in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot. Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR > Extra Screen." Image: NOTE NOTE NOTE Not all models support this function. The extra screen must be enabled to support this function. Buzzer Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log. Voice Prompts Select to enable audio broadcast in response to a face detection		Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected
With the second structure To use this function, make sure the snapshot function is enabled for Intel in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot. Video Matrix Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR > Extra Screen." Wideo Matrix NOTE Not all models support this function. The extra screen must be enabled to support this function. Buzzer Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log. Voice Prompts Select to enable audio broadcast in response to a face detection		channel.
for Intel in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR > Extra Screen."Video MatrixNOTENOTENot all models support this function.BuzzerSelect the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.LogSelect the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.Voice PromptsSelect to enable audio broadcast in response to a face detection	Snapshot	NOTE NOTE
Video Matrix Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR > Extra Screen." Image: Note the image: Note the enabled to support this function. Not all models support this function. Image: Note the extra screen must be enabled to support this function. Not all models to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Image: Note the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log. Select the check box to enable the Device to a face detection		To use this function, make sure the snapshot function is enabled
Video Matrix occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR > Extra Screen." Image: Ima		for Intel in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.
Video Matrix "Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR > Extra Screen." Image: Note Note Image: Note Not all models support this function. Image: Note The extra screen must be enabled to support this function. Buzzer Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Log Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log. Voice Prompts Select to enable audio broadcast in response to a face detection		Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event
Video Matrix Image: NOTE • Not all models support this function. • The extra screen must be enabled to support this function. Buzzer Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Log Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log. Voice Prompts Select to enable audio broadcast in response to a face detection		occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in
Image: Note of the image: Note of the image: Note and the image: Note and the image: Note and the image: Note of th	Video Matrix	"Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR > Extra Screen."
The extra screen must be enabled to support this function. Buzzer Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log. Voice Prompts Select to enable audio broadcast in response to a face detection		NOTE NOTE
Buzzer Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Log Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log. Voice Prompts Select to enable audio broadcast in response to a face detection		Not all models support this function.
Log Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log. Voice Prompts Select to enable audio broadcast in response to a face detection		• The extra screen must be enabled to support this function.
Log log. Voice Prompts Select to enable audio broadcast in response to a face detection	Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.
Voice Prompts Select to enable audio broadcast in response to a face detection		Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm
Voice Prompts	LOY	log.
event	Voice Promoto	Select to enable audio broadcast in response to a face detection
	voice Prompts	event.

- <u>Step 5</u> Click **OK** to save the settings.
- <u>Step 6</u> Select the **Enable** check box, and then click **Apply**.
 - The tripwire detecting function is active. When the target object crosses the tripwire in the defined direction, the system activates alarms.

5.11.3.1.2 Configuring Intrusion Rules

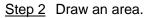
When the target enters and leaves the defined detection area, or the target appears in the defined area, the system activates alarms.

- You can define the shape and quantity of intrusion areas.
- Supports detecting the behaviors that enter and leave the intrusion areas.
- Supports detecting the behaviors that are moving in the intrusion areas. The quantity of areas and lasting time can be configured.
- Supports size filtering for target.

<u>Step 1</u> On the rule line that you added, in the **Type** list, select **Intrusion**. See Figure 5-169.

💱 AI						LIVE	- ₽
 € SMART SEA ▶ ■ PARAMETERS → 	Channel	2					
FACE DETECTION	1 E	nable Name	Туре	Draw	Trigger	Delete	Р
FACE RECOGNI	1	Rule1		•	\$		
> IVS							
B DATABASE →							
						Add	
						Apply B	lack

Figure 5-169



- 1) In the **Channel** list, select the channel that you want to configure the rules for.
- 2) Click .

The monitoring screen to configure the intrusion rules is displayed. See Figure 5-170.

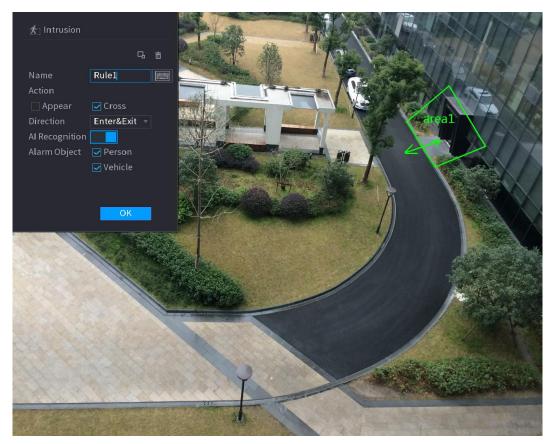


Figure 5-170

	3)	Configure the	settings for	the paramete	rs of drawing rules.	See Table 5-48.
--	----	---------------	--------------	--------------	----------------------	-----------------

Parameter	Description
Name	Enter the customized rule name.
Action	Configure the actions that are defined as intrusion. You can select
ACIION	the Appear check box and the Cross check box.
Direction	In the Direction list, select the direction of crossing the configured
Direction	area. You can select Enter&Exit, Enters, and Exits.
Filtering Target	Click I to draw areas to filter the target. NOTE You can configure two filtering targets (maximum size and minimum size). When the target that is crossing the tripwire is smaller than the minimum size or larger than the maximum size, no alarms will be activated. The maximum size should be larger than the minimum size.
AI Recognition	Enable the AI Recognition function (
	Table 5-48

- 4) Drag to draw an area.
- 5) Click \mathbf{OK} to save the settings.
- <u>Step 3</u> Click to set the actions to be triggered. For details, see Table 5-47.
- <u>Step 4</u> Select the **Enable** check box, and then click **Apply**.

The intrusion detecting function is active. When the target enters and leaves the area, or the target appears in the defined area, the system activates alarms.

5.11.3.2 Smart Search for IVS Function

You can search for the intelligent events and play back.

```
<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > AI > SMART SEARCH > IVS.
```

The **IVS** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-171.

🗳 AI			LIVE	2	₽ - 8	0
💫 SMART SEA 👻	Channel	2 *				
FACE DETECTION						
FACE RECOGNI	Start Time	2018 - 10 - 23 00 : 00 : 00				
> IVS	End Time	2018 - 10 - 23 23 : 59 : 59				
i≣ PARAMETERS ▶	Event Type	All				
🗈 DATABASE 🛛 🕨	Alarm Object	🗌 Person 🗌 Vehicle				
		Smart Search				

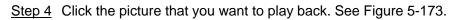
Figure 5-171

- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Channel** list, select the channel that you want to search for the events, and then set other parameters such as start time, end time, event type, and alarm object.
- Step 3 Click Smart Search.

The results that satisfy the searching conditions are displayed. See Figure 5-172.

IVS			
All Backup	Lock Add Mark		
Type:Tripwire Alarm Objec	Type:Tripwire Alarm Objec		
2018-10-24 10:05:31 2018-10-2	24 10:10:59		
Search Results:2	<< < 1/1 >	Go To	

Figure 5-172



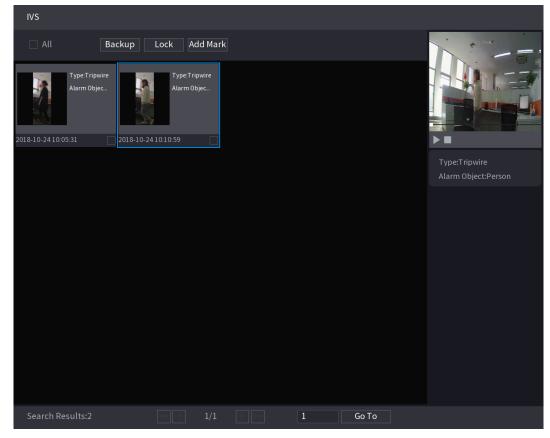


Figure 5-173

<u>Step 5</u> Click to play back the recorded video.

Double-click on the playing interface to switch between full screen playing and thumbnail playing.

You can also do the following operations to the recorded files.

To back up the recorded files to the external storage device, select files, click
 Backup, select the save path and file type, and then click Start. See Figure 5-174.

File Backup						
Device Name sdb1(USB USB)				▼ 14.92 GB/14.93 GB(Free/Total)		
Path	XVR/2018	3-10-23/		Browse		
🔽 Video	Pictu	re		File Type	DAV	
1 √Cha.	. Туре	Start Time	End Tim	e	Size(KB)	
1 72		2018-10-23 12:38:25	2018-10-	-23 12:38:44	4890	
6.48 MB(Space I	veeded)					Start

Figure 5-174

- To lock the files to make it unable to be overwritten, select the files, and then click Lock.
- To add a mark to the file, select the files and then click Add Mark.

5.12 IoT Function

5.12.1 Configuring Sensor Settings

You can connect external sensors wirelessly through the Device with USB gateway or through connecting to a camera gateway. After connection, you can activate alarm events through external sensors.

5.12.1.1 Connecting Sensor through Device

Only the Device with USB gateway supports this function.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > IoT > MANAGER > Sensor Pairing.

The Sensor Pairing interface is displayed. See Figure 5-175.

S loT									LIVE	1	
REALTIME DISPLAY	Se	nsor Pairing	Tempe	rature/Hu	Wireless Dete	ector	Wireless Sire				
SEARCH INFO		Access Type	All								
MANAGER											
		1 [Edit	Delete	Status	Access	Туре Ассе	ess Point	Туре		
										Add	

Figure 5-175

- <u>Step 2</u> In the Access Type list, select USB Gateway.
- Step 3 Click Add.

The Add interface is displayed. See Figure 5-176.

Add		
Access Type	USB Gateway	
Add Way	Pair	Pair
Access Point	USB Gateway-1	
Serial No.		
Name		
Туре		
Class		
Status		
		Back

Figure 5-176

Step 4 Click Pair.

The Device starts pairing with the sensor. After pairing is completed, see Figure 5-177.

Add		
Access Type	USB Gateway	
Add Way	Pair	Pair
Access Point	USB Gateway-1	
Serial No.	3J01837AAZ00008	
Name	USB-Panic Button-1	
Туре	Panic Button	
Class	Alarm In	
Status	Connected	
		Back

Figure 5-177

<u>Step 5</u> Click **Back** to exit the pairing interface.

The added sensor information is displayed. See Figure 5-178.

Click 🚺 to	o modify the ser	isor name; click	to delete sense	or information.
🕥 ют				
REALTIME DISPLAY	Sensor Pairing Tem	perature/Hu Wireless D	etector Wireless Siren	
SEARCH INFO	Access Type U	SB Gateway 🔹		
> MANAGER				
	1 Edit	Delete Status	Access Type Access Point USB Gateway USB-1	Type Panic Button
				•
	Refresh			Add

Figure 5-178

5.12.1.2 Connecting Sensor through Camera with Gateway

NOTE

Only the camera with gateway supports this function.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > IoT > MANAGER > Sensor Pairing.

The Sensor Pairing interface is displayed. See Figure 5-179.

б) ІоТ					
REALTIME DISPLAY	Sensor Pairing	Temperature/Hu	Wireless Detector	Wireless Siren	
SEARCH INFO	Access Type	All			
> MANAGER					
	1 E	dit Delete	Status Acce	ss Type Access Po	int Type
					Add

Figure 5-179

- <u>Step 2</u> In the Access Type list, select Camera Gateway.
- <u>Step 3</u> In the **Channel** list, select the channel that is connected to the camera.
- Step 4 Click Add.

The Add interface is displayed. See Figure 5-180.

Add		
Access Type	Camera Gateway	
Add Way	Pair	Pair
Access Point	Chn2-Air	
Serial No.		
Name		
Туре		
Class		
Status		
		Back

Figure 5-180

Step 5 Click Pair.

The Device starts pairing with the sensor. After pairing is completed, see Figure 5-181.

Add		
Access Type	Camera Gateway	
Add Way	Pair	Pair
Access Point	Chn6-Air	
Serial No.	3J01837AAZ00008	
Name	Chn6-Panic Button-1	
Туре	Panic Button	
Class	Alarm In	
Status	Connected	
		Back

Figure 5-181

<u>Step 6</u> Click **Back** to exit the pairing interface.

The added sensor information is displayed. See Figure 5-182.





	S loT									🗕 🗕 🙀
	REALTIME DISPLAY	Se	ensor Pairin	ig 1	emperature/Hu	Wireless De	tector Wirele	ess Siren		
	SEARCH INFO		Access Ty	ре	Camera Gateway		Channel	All		
>	MANAGER									
				Edit	Delete	Status	Access Type	Access Point	Туре	
							Camera Gat	Chn2-Airfly	Panic Button	Cł
									Ado	i

Figure 5-182

5.12.1.3 Configuring Alarm Linkage

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > IoT > MANAGER > Wireless Detector. The Wireless Detector interface is displayed. See Figure 5-183.

🕥 loT						0
REALTIME DISPLAY	Sensor Pairing	Temperature/Hu	Wireless Detector	Wireless Siren		
SEARCH INFO	Access Type	All	*			
> MANAGER						
		ole Setting Status	Access Type	Access Point	Туре	
		÷ •	Camera Gateway	Chn2-Airfly	Panic Button	
					Apply Bacl	٢

Figure 5-183

Step 2 In the Access Type list, select USB, Camera, or All.

Step 3 Click

The Setting interface is displayed. See 错误!未找到引用源。.

Setting				
Access Type	Camera Gateway	Access Point	Chn2-Airfly	
Туре	Panic Button	Name	Chn2-Panic Button-1	
Period Alarm Out	Setting Setting	PTZ Latch	Setting	Sec.
Post Record	10 5	Sec. Anti-Dither	5	Sec.
Record CH				
Snapshot				
Tour				
Voice Prompts	None 👻			
More Setting	Setting			
Default			ОК	Back

Figure 5-184

<u>Step 4</u> Configure the settings for alarm linkage. For details, see Table 5-49.

Parameter	Description
Name	Enter the customized alarm name.

Parameter	Description
	Click Setting to display setting interface.
Period	Define a period during which the motion detection is active. For details,
Penod	see "Setting Motion Detection Period" section in "5.10.4.1 Configuring
	Motion Detect Settings."
	Click Setting to display the PTZ interface.
PTZ	Enable PTZ linkage actions, such as selecting the preset that you want
	to be called when an alarm event occurs.
	Click Setting to display setting interface.
	General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices
	connected to the selected output port.
Alarm Out	External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected
	alarm box.
	Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices
	connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the
Latch	external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds to 300
	seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after
Post Record	the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300
	seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.
Anti-Dither	Configure the time period from end of event detection to the stop of
	alarm.
	Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s)
	starts recording after an alarm event occurs.
Record Channel	NOTE NOTE
	The recording for alarm and auto recording must be enabled. For
	details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule"
	and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."
	Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected
Snapshot	channel.
	NOTE NOTE
	To use this function, select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE >
	Snapshot, in the Mode list, select Event.
Tour	Select the Tour check box to enable a tour of the selected channels.
Voice Prompts	Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a local
	alarm event.

Parameter	Description
More Setting	 Show Message: Select the Show Message check box to enable a pop-up message in your local host PC. Buzzer: Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Video Matrix: Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR." NOTE Not all models support this function. Send Email: Enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs. NOTE NOTE Log: Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log
	Table 5-49

<u>Step 5</u> Click **OK** to save the settings.

<u>Step 6</u> On the **Wireless Detector** interface, click **Apply** to complete the settings.

5.12.2 Configuring Temperature and Humidity Camera

You can view, search and export the temperature and humidity data of camera with such sensors and configure the alarm event settings.

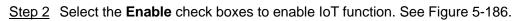
To use this function, please make sure there is at least one camera with temperature and humidity sensor has been connected to the Device.

5.12.2.1 Enabling Detecting Function

You should enable the IoT function the first time when you enter this interface. <u>Step 1</u> On the main menu, select **IoT > MANAGER > Temperature/Humidity**. The **Temperature/Humidity** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-185.

🕥 loT							
REALTIME DISPLAY	Sen	sor Pairin	g Tempera	ature/Hu \	Wireless Detector	Wireless Siren	
SEARCH INFO		2	Enable	Setting	Access Point	Туре	Detect Position Nam
> MANAGER				٠	Chn 6	Temperature	Chn6-Temperature-
				¢	Chn 6	Humidity	Chn6-Humidity-1

Figure 5-185



S IoT						
REALTIME DISPLAY	Sensor Pairing	J Temperat	ure/Hu	Wireless Detector	Wireless Siren	
SEARCH INFO	2	Enable	Setting	Access Point	Туре	Detect Position Nam
> MANAGER			\$	Chn 6	Temperature	Chn6-Temperature-
	2					Chn6-Humidity-1



The Device starts detecting the temperature and humidity data from the camera and display on the **Realtime Display** interface.

5.12.2.2 Viewing Temperature and Humidity Data

You can view the temperature and humidity data on the **REALTIME DISPLAY** interface after the IoT function is enabled.

In the **Refresh Interval** box, select data refresh interval. For example, you can select **5 Sec**. You can also display the temperature and humidity data in graphical way by selecting the **Display Graph** check box to. See Figure 5-187 for humidity data in graphical way.

	S loT					
>	REALTIME DISPLAY					
	SEARCH INFO	Refresh Interval	5 Sec.			
		Display Graph	Access Point	Туре	Detect Position Name	Current Valu
	MANAGER		Chn 6	Temperature	Chn6-Temperature-1	26°C
						30% RH
			Humidity Chart			
		(%RH) 100				 Chn6-Humidity-1
		80				
		30				and managements
		10				
		0				
		Clear				ocked Export

Figure 5-187

NOTE Click **Clear** to delete the data.

5.12.2.3 Exporting Temperature and Humidity Data

You can export the temperature and humidity data in .BMP format. Take exporting humidity data as an example.

Step 1 Prepare a USB device and plug it into the Device.

Step 2 On the Realtime Display interface, click the Humidity tab. See Figure 5-188.

> REALTIME DISPLAY SEARCH INFO MANAGER Refresh Interval Sec. Display Graph Access Point Type Detect Position Name Current Valu Chn 6 Temperature Chn 6 Humidity Chn 6 Ferres Chn 7 Chn 8 Chn 8 Chn 8 Chn 9 Chn 9 Chn 9 Chn 9 Chn 9 Chn 9	S IoT					
SEARCH INFO Display Graph Access Point Type Detect Position Name Current Value MANAGER Chn 6 Temperature Chn6-Temperature-1 26°C Chn 6 Humidity Chn6-Humidity:1 3092 RH Image: Chart Chart Chart Image: Chart	REALTIME DISPLAY		50			
Display Graph Access Point Type Detect Position Name Current Value Chn 6 Temperature Chn6-Temperature-1 26°C Chn 6 Humidity Chn6-Humidity-1 30% RH Chn 7 Temperature Chart Humidity Chart Chn6-Humidity-1 10 Chn6 Chn6-Humidity-1 Chn6-Humidity-1 10 Chn6-Humidity-1 Chn6-Humidity-1 Chn6-Humidity-1	SEARCH INFO	Refresh Interval	5 Sec.			
Child		Display Graph	Access Point	Туре	Detect Position Name	Current Valu
Temperature Chart Humidity Chart (%RH) (%RH) (%RH) (%RH) (%RH) (%Automatical and a stress of the stress of t	MANAGER		Chn 6	Temperature	Chn6-Temperature-1	26°C
Temperature Chart Humidity Chart (%RH) • Chn6-Humidity-1 100 • 90 • 80 • 70 • 60 • 50 • 20 • 10 • 0 •						30%RH
Temperature Chart Humidity Chart (%RH) • Chn6-Humidity-1 100 • 90 • 80 • 70 • 60 • 50 • 20 • 10 • 0 •						
Temperature Chart Humidity Chart (%RH) • Chn6-Humidity-1 100 • 90 • 80 • 70 • 60 • 50 • 20 • 10 • 0 •						
Temperature Chart Humidity Chart (%RH) • Chn6-Humidity-1 100 • 90 • 80 • 70 • 60 • 50 • 20 • 10 • 0 •						
Temperature Chart Humidity Chart (%RH) • Chn6-Humidity-1 100 • 90 • 80 • 70 • 60 • 50 • 20 • 10 • 0 •						
Temperature Chart Humidity Chart (%RH) • Chn6-Humidity-1 100 • 90 • 80 • 70 • 60 • 50 • 20 • 10 • 0 •						
Temperature Chart Humidity Chart (%RH) • Chn6-Humidity-1 100 • 90 • 80 • 70 • 60 • 50 • 20 • 10 • 0 •						
Temperature Chart Humidity Chart (%RH) • Chn6-Humidity-1 100 • 90 • 80 • 70 • 60 • 50 • 20 • 10 • 0 •						
(%RH) • Chn5-Humidity-1 90						•
		Temperature Chart	Humidity Chart			
						 Chn6-Humidity-1
						M
						and the second second
Clear Locked Export						
Clear Locked Export						
		Clear			Lo	ocked Export

Figure 5-188

- Step 3 Click Locked to lock the data.
 - The export button is enabled.
- <u>Step 4</u> Click **Export**. The system starts exporting the data. After exporting is finished, a **Message** dialog box is displayed.
- Step 5 Click OK.

You can find the exported data on your USB device.

5.12.2.4 Configuring Alarm Linkage

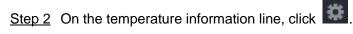
You can configure alarm linkage settings for temperature and humidity data.

5.12.2.4.1 Configuring Alarm Linkage for Temperature Data

<u>Step 1</u> On the main interface, select **IoT > MANAGER > Temperature/Humidity**. The **Temperature/Humidity** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-189.

🕥 ют						
REALTIME DISPLAY	Sensor Pai	ring Tempe	rature/Hu \	Vireless Detector	Wireless Siren	
SEARCH INFO	2	Enable	Setting	Access Point	Туре	Detect Position Nam
> MANAGER			۵	Chn 6	Temperature	Chn6-Temperature-
			\$	Chn 6	Humidity	Chn6-Humidity-1

Figure 5-189



The Setting interface is displayed. See Figure 5-190.

Setting					
Access Point			Туре		
Detect Position Name	Chn6-Temperature-1		Preview Channel	6	
Event Type	High		Upper Limit	26 °C Enable	
Period	Setting		PTZ	Setting	
Alarm Out	Setting		Latch	10	Sec.
Post Record	10	Sec.	Anti-Dither	5	Sec.
Record CH					
Snapshot					
Tour					
Voice Prompts	None				
More Setting	Setting				
Default				Save Ba	ack

Figure 5-190

<u>Step 3</u> Configure the settings for alarm linkage. See Table 5-50.

Parameter	Description
Access Point	Indicates the channel that the camera is connected to.

Parameter	Description					
Туре	Temperature by default.					
Detect Position Name	Set the detect position name.					
Preview Channel	Select the channel that you want to preview to help monitor the channel of access point. This channel could be the channel of access point or any other channels according to your actual situation.					
Event Type	Select event type as High or Low , and set the upper and low temperature limit respectively. For example, select event type as					
Upper Limit	High and set upper limit as 28 , the alarm occurs when the temperature reaches 28° C.					
Enable	Enable the alarm function.					
Period	Define a period during which the alarm setting is active. For more information about setting the period, see "5.10.4.1 Configuring Motion Detect Settings."					
Alarm Out	 Click Setting to display setting interface. General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices connected to the selected output port. External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected alarm box. Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices connected by USB gateway or camera gateway. 					
PTZ	Click Setting to display the PTZ interface. Enable PTZ linkage actions, such as selecting the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.					
Latch	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds. If you enter 0, there will be no delay.					
Post Record	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.					
Anti-Dither	Configure the time period from end of event detection to the stop of alarm.					
Snapshot	Select the check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel. NOTE To use this function, make sure the snapshot is enabled motion detect alarms in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.					
Record CH	Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm occurs. NOTE The recording for IoT alarms and auto recording function must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."					

Parameter	Description					
Tour	Select the check box to enable a tour of the selected channels. NOTE To use this function, make sure the tour is enabled and configured in Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR.					
Voice Prompts	Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a temperature alarm event.					
More Setting	 Show Message: Select the Show Message check box to enable a pop-up message in your local host PC. Buzzer: Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Video Matrix: Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR." NOTE Not all models support this function. Send Email: Enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs. NOTE To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL. Log: Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log. 					

<u>Step 4</u> Click **Save** to save the settings.

5.12.2.4.2 Configuring Alarm Settings for Humidity Data

You can configure the alarm event by setting the humidity data.

<u>Step 1</u> On the main interface, select **IoT > MANAGER > Temperature/Humidity**.

The **Temperature/Humidity** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-191.

S IoT							
REALTIME DISPLAY	Sen	ısor Pairin	g Tempera	ature/Hu \	Nireless Detector	Wireless Siren	
SEARCH INFO		2	Enable	Setting	Access Point	Туре	Detect Position Nam
> MANAGER				¢	Chn 6	Temperature	Chn6-Temperature-
				¢	Chn 6	Humidity	Chn6-Humidity-1

Figure 5-191

<u>Step 2</u> On the humidity information line, click

The **Setting** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-192.

Setting					
Access Point			Туре		
Detect Position Name	Chn6-Humidity-1		Preview Channel	6 -	
Event Type	High Humidity -		Upper Limit	60 %RH Enable	
Period	Setting		PTZ	Setting	
Alarm Out	Setting		Latch	10	Sec.
Post Record	10	Sec.	Anti-Dither	5	Sec.
Record CH					
Snapshot					
Tour					
Voice Prompts	None				
More Setting	Setting				
Default				Save Ba	ck

Figure 5-192

Step 3 Configure the settings for the following parameters. See Table 5-51.

Parameter	Description
Access Point	Indicates the channel that the camera is connected to.

Parameter	Description
Туре	Humidity by default.
Detect Position Name	Set the detect position name.
	Select the channel that you want to preview to help monitor the channel of access point. This channel could be the channel of
Preview Channel	access point or any other channels according to your actual situation.
Event Type	Select event type as High Humidity or Low Humidity , and set the upper and low humidity limit respectively. For example, select
Upper Limit	event type as High Humidity and set upper limit as 60 , the alarm occurs when the humidity reaches 60%RH.
Enable	Enable the alarm function.
Period	Define a period during which the alarm setting is active. For more information about setting the period, see "5.10.4.1 Configuring Motion Detect Settings."
Alarm Out	 Click Setting to display setting interface. General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices connected to the selected output port. External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected alarm box. Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.
PTZ	Click Setting to display the PTZ interface. Enable PTZ linkage actions, such as selecting the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.
Latch	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds. If you enter 0, there will be no delay.
Post Record	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.
Anti-Dither	Configure the time period from end of event detection to the stop of alarm.
Snapshot	Select the check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel. NOTE To use this function, make sure the snapshot is enabled motion detect alarms in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.
Record CH	Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm occurs. NOTE The recording for IoT alarms and auto recording function must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."

Tour Tour Voice Prompts	Select the check box to enable a tour of the selected channels. NOTE To use this function, make sure the tour is enabled and configured Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR . Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a emperature alarm event.
Voice Prompts	
•	
• [_ Tr	 Show Message: Select the Show Message check box to enable a pop-up message in your local host PC. Buzzer: Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device. Video Matrix: Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR." NOTE NOTE NoTE NOTE NOTE NOTE NOTE NOTE In a larm event occurs. In a larm event event

<u>Step 4</u> Click **Save** to save the settings.

5.12.2.5 Searching IoT Information

You can search and backup all your IoT data.

To back up the data, you should prepare a USB device and plug it into the Device. <u>Step 1</u> On the main interface, select **IoT > SEARCH INFO**. See Figure 5-193.

🔊 IoT					LIVE	🔔 💽 - 🔡
REALTIME DISPLAY	Access Point	1		Display Type	List	
> SEARCH INFO	Туре	All		Status	All	
MANAGER	Start Time	2017-11-06		End Time	2017-12-06 00:1	
		Time	Access Point	Туре	Detect Position	Name C
		₩ > > 1				, Backup

Figure 5-193

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the parameters settings. See Table 5-52.

Parameter	Description			
Access Point	Indicates the channel that the camera is connected to.			
Display Type	In the Display Type list, select List or Graph.			
Turno	Select the information type that you want to search. You can select			
Туре	Humidity or Temperature.			
	Select the information state that you want to search.			
Status	This option is available when you select List in the Display Type			
	list.			
Start Time	Enter the start time and end time for the information that you want			
End Time	to search.			

Table 5-52

Step 3 Click Search.

The system starts search according to your parameters settings. After searching is finished, the result displays.

• For the data displayed in list, see Figure 5-194.

Click Go To to switch result pages.

	🕥 loT						LIVE	🔔 🕒 - 🖽
	REALTIME DISPLAY	Assess D	aint	1		Display Type	List	
	SEARCH INFO	Access P	Access Point				List	
		Туре		All		Status	All	
	MANAGER	Start Time		2017-11-06	2017-11-06 00:00:00		2017-12-06 00:00	:00
								Search
		120		Time	Access Point	Туре	Detect Position Na	ame 🔺
				1-07 21:13:58	Chn 1	Humidity	Chn1-Humidity-	
			2017-1	1-07 21:14:00	Chn 1	Temperature	Chn1-Temperatur	
			2017-11	1-07 21:14:01	Chn 1	Humidity	Chn1-Humidity-	
			2017-11	1-07 21:14:09	Chn 1	Temperature	Chn1-Temperatur	
			2017-1	1-07 21:14:10	Chn 1	Humidity	Chn1-Humidity-	
			2017-11	1-07 21:14:14	Chn 1	Humidity	Chn1-Humidity-	
			2017-11	1-07 21:14:23	Chn 1	Humidity	Chn1-Humidity-	
			2017-11	1-07 21:16:04	Chn 1	Temperature	Chn1-Temperatur	
			2017-11	1-07 21:16:06	Chn 1	Temperature	Chn1-Temperatur	
			2017-11	1-07 21:16:07	Chn 1	Humidity	Chn1-Humidity-	
		11	2017-11	1-07 21:16:16	Chn 1	Temperature	Chn1-Temperatur	
		12	2017-11	1-07 21:16:17	Chn 1	Humidity	Chn1-Humidity-	
		13	2017-1	1-07 21:16:26	Chn 1	Temperature	Chn1-Temperatur	
		14	2017-11	1-07 21:16:27	Chn 1	Humidity	Chn1-Humidity-	
			2017-11	1-07 21:16:36	Chn 1	Temperature	Chn1-Temperatur	
								•
			1/85	> >> 1	> >> 1 Go To			Backup



• For the data displayed in graph, see Figure 5-195.

🕥 loT					LIVE	
REALTIME DISPLAY	Access Point	1		Dianlay Type	Graph	
> SEARCH INFO				Display Type	Graph	
MANAGER	Туре	Humidity				
MANAGEN	Start Time	2017-11-06	00:00:00	End Time	2017-12-06 00:	00:00
						Search
	(%RH) 100				• Chn1-H	umidity-1
	90					
	50	•••••••	******	*******		· ····································
	40 30					
						Backup

Figure 5-195

<u>Step 4</u> Click **Backup.** The system starts exporting the data.

After exporting is finished, a **Message** dialog box is displayed.

Step 5 Click OK.

You can find the exported data on your USB device.

5.12.3 Configuring Wireless Siren

You can connect the wireless siren to the Device, when there is an alarm event activated on the Device, the wireless siren generate alarms.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > IoT > MANAGER > Wireless Siren.

The Wireless Siren interface is displayed. See Figure 5-196.

🕥 loT					LIVE	L 🗗 🗸 😳
REALTIME DISPLAY	Sensor Pairing	Temperature/Hu	Wireless Detector	Wireless Siren		
SEARCH INFO	USB Gateway					
> MANAGER	Mode					
	Auto					
	Manual					
	Stop					
	Camera Gatev	vay				
	Mode	All 1 2				
	Auto					
	Manual					
	Stop					
	Alarm Release	ок				
					Apply	Back

Figure 5-196

Step 2 Configure the settings for the wireless alarm output. For details, see Table 5-53.

Parameter	Description				
	• Auto: Automatically activate alarm if the alarm output function				
	for wireless siren is enabled for specific events. For example, if				
USB Gateway,	you want to enable the alarm output through wireless siren for				
Camera Gateway	motion detection, see "Alarm Output" parameter in Table 5-39.				
	Manual: Activate alarm immediately.				
	• Stop: Do not activate alarm.				
Alarm Release	Click OK to clear all alarm output status of wireless siren.				

Table 5-53

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to save the settings.

5.13 Configuring POS Settings

You can connect the Device to the POS (Point of Sale) machine and receive the information from it. This function applies to the scenarios such as supermarket POS machine. After connection is established, the Device can access the POS information and display the overlaid text in the channel window.

Playing POS information in the local playback and viewing the POS information in the live view screen support single-channel mode and four-channel mode. Displaying monitoring screen and playing back in the web support multi-channel mode.

5.13.1 Searching the Transaction Records

	NOTE
--	------

The system supports fuzzy search.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > POS > POS SEARCH.

The POS SEARCH interface is displayed. See Figure 5-197.

	POS							
>	POS SEARCH	POS SEARCH				Search		
	POS SETUP	Channel		1		Search		
		Start Time		2018 - 07 - 17				
		End Time		2018 - 07 - 18	00:00:00			
			Trans	action Time		Channel	Play	
		< 0/0						

Figure 5-197

- <u>Step 2</u> In the **POS SEARCH** box, enter the information such as transaction number on your receipt, amount, or product name.
- <u>Step 3</u> In the **Start Time** box and **End Time** box, enter the time period that you want to search the POS transaction information.
- Step 4 Click Search.

The searched transaction results display in the table.

5.13.2 Configuring POS Settings

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > POS > POS SETUP. The POS SETUP interface is displayed. See Figure 5-198.

POS						
POS SEARCH	POS Name	pos1	•	Enable		
> POS SETUP	POS Name	posi	•	EllaDie		
				Record CH	\$	
				Privacy	•	
				Protocol Type	POS	
				Connect Type	ТСР 🔻	\$
				Convert	UTF-8	
				Overlay	TURN	
				Network time out	100	Sec.
				Time Display	120	Sec.
				Font Size	Medium	
				Color		
				POS Info		
				Line Delimiter		
	Default				Apply [Back

Figure 5-198

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the POS parameters. See Table 5-54.

Parameter	Description				
	In the POS Name list, select the POS machine that you want to				
POS Name	configures settings for. Click to modify the POS name.				
1 00 Name	NOTE NOTE				
	The POS name supports 21 Chinese characters or 63 English				
	characters.				
Enable Enable the POS function.					
	Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected				
	channel(s) starts recording after an alarm occurs.				
Record CH	NOTE NOTE				
	The recording for POS alarms and auto recording function must				
	be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video				
	Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."				
Privacy Setup	Enter the privacy content.				
Protocol Type	Select POS by default. Different machine corresponds to different				
	protocol.				

Parameter	Description			
	In the Connect Type list, select the connection protocol type.			
Connect Type	Click , the IP Address interface is displayed.			
	In the Source IP box, enter the IP address (the machine that is			
	connected to the Device) that sends messages.			
Convert	Select a character encoding mode.			
Overlay	In the Overlay list, Select Turn or ROLL .			
	When the network is not working correctly and cannot be			
Network time out	recovered after the entered timeout limit, the POS information will			
	not display normally. After the network is recovered, the latest			
	POS information will be displayed.			
	Enter the time that how long you want to keep the POS			
Time Display	information displaying. For example, enter 5, the POS information			
	disappear from the screen after 5 seconds.			
Font Size	In the Font Size list, select Small, Medium, or Big as the text			
FULL SIZE	size of POS information			
COLOR	In the color bar, click to select the color for the text size of POS			
COLOR	information.			
POS Info	Enable the POS Info function, the POS information displays in the			
	live view screen.			
Line Delimiter	Enter the line delimiter that you want to use.			

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

5.14 Configuring Backup Settings

5.14.1 Finding USB Device

When you inset a USB storage device into the USB port of the Device, the Device detects the USB storage device and pops up "Find USB device" interface, which provides you a shortcut to perform backup and upgrading operations. See Figure 5-199.

For details, see "5.14.2 Backing up Files", "5.20.2 Viewing Log Information", "5.19.4 Exporting and Importing System Settings", and "5.19.6 Upgrading the Device."

Find USB device.	
	sda5(USB DISK) 15.60 GB/15.60 GB(Free/Total)
File Backu	p Log Backup
Config Back	up System Upgrade

Figure 5-199

5.14.2 Backing up Files

You can back up the recorded videos and snapshots.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > BACKUP.

The **BACKUP** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-200.

🗘 ВАСКИР					[LIVE	1 🕞 🗸 🛤
> BACKUP	Device Name Path	sda5(USB [DISK)	Format Browse	15.60 GB/15.60) GB(Fre	e/Total)
	Record CH	1		Туре	All		
	Start Time	2017-11-06	6 00:00:00	End Time	2017-11-06	09:24:3	36
	File Format	DAV			Search		Clear
	0 Cha	nnel Type	Start Time	End Time	Size(KB		
	0.00 KB(Space	Needed)					Backup

Figure 5-200

Step 2 Configure the settings for the backup parameters. See Table 5-5	Step 2	Configure the	settings for the	backup parameters.	. See Table 5-55
--	--------	---------------	------------------	--------------------	------------------

Parameter	Description			
Device Name	In the Device Name list, select the device that you want to back up			
	the files to.			

Parameter	Description				
	Click Format, the Format interface is displayed.				
	• If the capacity of external storage device is less than 2TB, you				
Format	can select FAT32 or NTFS to format it.				
	If the capacity of external storage device is equal to or more				
	than 2TB, you can only select NTFS to format it.				
Path	Click Browse, the Browse interface is displayed. Select the route				
Falli	where you want to search for the files.				
Record CH	In the Record CH list, select the channel where you want to search				
Recold CH	for the files.				
Туре	In the Type list, select the file type that you want to search.				
Start Time	Enter the start time and end time for the files that you want to				
End Time	search.				
File Format	In the File Format list, select the file format as DAV or MP4 that				
File Format	you want to search.				

- <u>Step 3</u> Click **Search** to search the files that meet the configured settings. The searched results will display in the table.
- <u>Step 4</u> Select the files that you want to back up.
- <u>Step 5</u> Click **Backup** to back up the selected files to the configured path. NOTE

Click Clear to remove all the searched results.

5.15 Network Management

5.15.1 Configuring Network Settings

You can ensure the network interworking between the Device and other devices through configuring the network settings.

5.15.1.1 Configuring TCP/IP Settings

You can configure the settings for the Device such as IP address, DNS according to the networking plan.

Select **Main Menu > NETWORK > TCP/IP**, the **TCP/IP** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-201. For details about parameter settings, see "5.1.4.4 Configuring Network Settings."

	🚱 NETWORK					€
>	TCP/IP	Net Mode	Multi-address			
	CONNECTION	Default Ethernet Port				
	Wi-Fi	Ethernet Card	Ethernet Port1			
	PPPoE	IP Version	IPv4			
	DDNS	MAC Address				
	EMAIL	DHCP				
	UPnP	IP Address	192 . 168 . 20 . 20			
	SNMP	Subnet Mask	255 . 255 . 0 . 0			
	MULTICAST	Default Gateway	192 . 168 . 0 . 1			
	REGISTER	DNS DHCP				
	ALARM CENTER	Preferred DNS	8.8.8.8			
		Alternate DNS	8.8.4.4			
	P2P					
		МТО	1500			
		Test		A	<mark>pply</mark> Ba	ac

Figure 5-201

5.15.1.2 Configuring Port Settings

You can configure the maximum connection accessing the Device from Client such as WEB, Platform, and Mobile Phone and configure each port settings.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > NETWORK > CONNECTION. The CONNECTION interface is displayed. See Figure 5-202.

	🚱 NETWORK				LIVE	1 🕞 -	
	TCP/IP	Max Connection	128	(0 -128)			
>	CONNECTION	TCP Port	37777	(1025 - 65535)			
	Wi-Fi	UDP Port	37778	(1025 - 65535)			
	3G/4G	HTTP Port	80	(1 - 65535)			
	PPPoE	RTSP Port	554	(1 - 65535)			
	DDNS	POS Port	38800	(1025 - 65535)			
	EMAIL	HTTPS Enable					
	UPnP	HTTPS Port	443	(1 - 65535)			
	SNMP						
	MULTICAST						
	REGISTER						
	ALARM CENTER						
	P2P						
					Apply	Ba	ack

Figure 5-202

Step 2 Configure the settings for the connection parameters. See Table 5-56. \square

The connection parameters except Max Connection cannot take effects until the Device has been restarted.

Parameter	Description
	The allowable maximum clients accessing the Device at the same
Max Connection	time, such as WEB, Platform, and Mobile Phone.
	Select a value between 1 and 128. The default value setting is 128.
TCP Port	The default value setting is 37777. You can enter the value
TOPFOIL	according to your actual situation.
	The default value setting is 37778. You can enter the value
UDP Port	according to your actual situation.
	The default value setting is 80. You can enter the value according
HTTP Port	to your actual situation.
	If you enter other value, for example, 70, and then you should enter
	70 after the IP address when logging in the Device by browser.
RTSP Port	The default value setting is 554. You can enter the value according
KISP PUIL	to your actual situation.
POS Port	Data transmission. The value range is from 1 through 65535. The
P03 P01	default value is 38800.
HTTPS Enable	Enable HTTPS.
	HTTPS communication port. The default value setting is 443. You
HTTPS Port	can enter the value according to your actual situation.

Table 5-56

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

5.15.1.3 Configuring Wi-Fi Connection Settings

You can make wireless connection between the Device and the other devices in the same network through Wi-Fi settings, facilitating the devices connection and mobility.

|--|

Only the Device with Wi-Fi module supports this function.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > NETWORK > Wi-Fi.

The Wi-Fi interface is displayed. See Figure 5-203.

					-							
	🚱 NETWORK							LIVE			00	
	TCP/IP	Wi-Fi Auto	Connect									
	CONNECTION	in Frato	Connect									
>	Wi-Fi	0	SSID	ç	ignal Intensi	tv	Wi-Fi Working Info					
	3G/4G		0010	C		'	Current Hotspot	No Connect	ion			
	PPPoE							NO CONNECT	1011			
	DDNS						IP Address					
	EMAIL						Subnet Mask					
	UPnP						Default Gateway					
	SNMP											
	MULTICAST											
	REGISTER											
	ALARM CENTER											
	P2P											
		Refresh						Apply		Ba	ick	

Figure 5-203

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the Wi-Fi connection parameters. See Table 5-57.

Parameter	Description	
	Enable Wi-Fi Auto Connect.	
Wi-Fi Auto Connect	After the Device is restarted, it will automatically connect to the	
	nearest hotspot that had been connected successfully.	
Refresh	Refresh the hotspot list. The self-adaption function such as adding	
Kenesh	password is supported if such setting was once configured.	
	In the hotpots list, select a hotspot, and then click Connect .	
	• To reconnect the same hotspot, disconnect first and then	
Connect	reconnect.	
	To connect to other hotspot, disconnect from the current	
	connected hotspot first, and then connect to the other hotspot.	
Disconnect	To disconnect from a hotspot, click Disconnect .	

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

After the Device is connected to a Wi-Fi hotspot, in the **Wi-Fi Working Info** area, the current hotspot, IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway are displayed.

5.15.1.4 Configuring 3G/4G Settings

You can connect a wireless 3G/4G module to the USB port of the Device and then access the Device with the IP address provided by the module.

NOTE

Not all models support this function.

<u>Step 1</u> Connect the wireless 3G/4G module to the USB port of the Device.

Step 2 Select Main Menu > NETWORK > 3G/4G.

The **3G/4G** interface is displayed, see Figure 5-204.

🚱 NETWORK				LIVE	L 🕂 - 🔛
TCP/IP CONNECTION	TD-LTE atl				
Wi-Fi	Ethernet Card	Ite0	👻 🔽 Enable		
3G/4G	Network Type	TD-LTE			
PPPoE	APN	3gnet			
DDNS	AUTH	NO_AUTH			
EMAIL	Dial No.	*99#			
UPnP					
SNMP				Dial	
MULTICAST	Wireless Network				
REGISTER	Module State		IP Address		
ALARM CENTER	SIM State	EXIST	Subnet Mask		
P2P	PPP State	OFFLINE	Default Gateway		
				Apply	Back

Figure 5-204

The 3G/4G interface is consisted of three areas:

- Area 1: Displays the signal strength.
- Area 2: Displays the module configurations.
- Area 3: Displays the connection state.

The information of Area 2 will display after the 3G/4G module is connected; while the information of Area 1 and Area 3 will display only after the 3G/4G function is enabled.

<u>Step 3</u> The Device starts identifying the wireless module and displays the recognized information for the parameters in Area 2. See Table 5-58.

Parameter	Description
Ethernet Card	Displays the name of Ethernet card.

Description
Displays the network type. Different type represents different supplier.
Displays the default APN number.
Displays the default dial No.
Authentication mode. You can select PAP , CHAP , or NO_AUTH .

- <u>Step 4</u> Select the **Enable** check box.
- <u>Step 5</u> Click **Dial** to start connecting.

After the connection is established, the result is displayed in the **Wireless Network** area. See Figure 5-205.

	J.					
	🚱 NETWORK					
	TCP/IP	TD-LTE att				
	CONNECTION					
	Wi-Fi	Ethernet Card	Ite0	 Enable 		
>	3G/4G	Network Type	TD-LTE			
	PPPoE	APN	3gnet			
	DDNS	AUTH	NO_AUTH			
	EMAIL	Dial No.	*99#			
	UPnP					
	SNMP				Disconnect	
	MULTICAST	Wireless Network				
	REGISTER	Module State		IP Address	192.168.59.234	
	ALARM CENTER	SIM State	EXIST	Subnet Mask	255.0.0.0	
	P2P	PPP State	ONLINE	Default Gateway	192.168.59.235	
					Apply Back	

Figure 5-205

<u>Step 6</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

Supported 3G/4G Modules by the Device

- China Mobile 3G/4G: ZTE MF832S
- China Mobile 4G: ZTE MF832S
- China Unicom 3G: ZTE MF667S, HUAWEI E353U-1
- China Telecom 4G: HUAWEI EC122, ZTE AC2736
- If the Device is connected to China Telecom 3G/4G network, you can login the Device with the public IP address through the PC of public internet (The HTTP port is not configured as 80). If the Device is connected to China Unicom or China Mobile 3G network, which are defined as private network, therefore you cannot login the Device through PC that is connected to public internet.

- The Ethernet card names that are displayed on the 3G/4G interface are not constant, and they could be ppp5, ppp6, ppp7 or ppp8 and are different depending on the USB2.0 port on the Device that is connected to the 3G module.
- If you dial to connect to 3G/4G network, you have to keep trying till succeeded. The default
 gateway could be switched depending on the priority of Ethernet cards.
- The China Unicom and China Mobile 3G/4G modules in USB flash disk style do not support EDGE mode for the moment.

5.15.1.5 Configuring PPPoE Settings

PPPoE is another way for the Device to access the network. You can establish network connection by configuring PPPoE settings to give the Device a dynamic IP address in the WAN. To use this function, firstly you need to obtain the user name and password from the Internet Service Provider.

		played. See Figure 3-200.	
🚱 NETWORK			
TCP/IP CONNECTION Wi-Fi 3G/4G > PPPoE DDNS	Enable User Name Password IP Address		
EMAIL UPnP SNMP MULTICAST REGISTER ALARM CENTER			
P2P			
			Apply Back

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > NETWORK > PPPoE.

The PPPoE interface is displayed. See Figure 5-206.

Figure 5-206

- <u>Step 2</u> Enable the PPPoE function.
- <u>Step 3</u> In the **User Name** box and **Password** box, enter the user name and password accordingly provided by the Internet Service Provider.
- <u>Step 4</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

The system pops up a message to indicate the successfully saved. The IP address appears on the PPPoE interface. You can use this IP address to access the Device.

NOTE When the PPPoE function is enabled, the IP address on the **TCP/IP** interface cannot be modified.

5.15.1.6 Configuring DDNS Settings

When the IP address of the Device changes frequently, the DDNS function can dynamically refresh the correspondence between the domain on DNS and the IP address, ensuring you access the Device by using the domain.

Preparing for Configuration

Please confirm if the Device supports the DDNS Type and log in the website provided by the DDNS service provider to register the information such as domain from PC located in the WAN.

After you have registered and logged in the DDNS website successfully, you can view the information of all the connected devices under this user name.

Configuring Steps

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > NETWORK > DDNS.

The **DDNS** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-207.

	🚱 NETWORK			
	TCP/IP	Enable		
	CONNECTION	Lilable		ion, third-party server may collect your device
	Wi-Fi		info.	ion, third party server may concer your device
	PPPoE	DDNS Type Host IP	Dyndns DDNS - members.dyndns.org	
>	DDNS	Domain Name	inembers.aynans.org	
	EMAIL	User Name		
	UPnP	Password		
	SNMP	Interval	5	Min.
	MULTICAST			
	REGISTER			
	ALARM CENTER			
	P2P			
				Apply Back

Figure 5-207

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the DDNS parameters.

• Non Quick DDNS type. See Table 5-59.

Parameter	Description		
	Enable the DDNS function.		
Enable	NOTE NOTE		
LIIADIE	After enabling DDNS function, the third-party might collect your		
	Device information.		
DDNS Type	Type and address of DDNS service provider.		
	Type: Dyndns DDNS; address: members.dyndns.org		
Host IP	Type: NO-IP DDNS; address: dynupdate.no-ip.com		
	Type: CN99 DDNS; address: members.3322.org		
Domain Name	The domain name for registering on the website of DDNS service		
Domain Name	provider.		
User Name	Enter the user name and password obtained from DDNS service		
Password	provider. You need to register (including user name and password)		
Fassworu	on the website of DDNS service provider.		
Interval	Enter the amount of time that you want to update the DDNS.		

• Quick DDNS type. See Table 5-60.

Parameter	Description				
Enable	Enable the DDNS function.				
DDNS Type	Type of DDNS service provider.				
Host IP	Address of DDNS service provider. The default is				
	www.quickddns.com which cannot be modified.				
	The domain name for registering on the website of DDNS service				
	provider.				
Domain Name	Select the domain mode as default domain or customized domain.				
Domain Name	• The default domain format is "MAC address (without				
	".").quickddns.com"				
	The customized domain format is "name. quickddns.com."				
Email	In the Email box, enter the email address that is used to access				
	the DDNS service provider.				
	After configuration is completed, click Test to check whether the				
Test	domain name is successfully registered. If yes, go to the next step;				
	if not, please check the network connection status.				

Table 5-60

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

Enter the domain name in the browser on your PC, and then press **Enter**. If the web interface of the Device is displayed, the configuration is successful. If not, the configuration is failed.

5.15.1.7 Configuring EMAIL Settings

You can configure the email settings to enable the system to send the email as a notification when there is an alarm event occurs.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.

The **EMAIL** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-208.

	🚱 NETWORK				LIVE	L + - 00
	TCP/IP	Enable				
	CONNECTION	SMTP Server	MailServer			
	Wi-Fi	Port	25			
	3G/4G	User Name				
	PPPoE	Password				
	DDNS	Anonymity				
>	EMAIL					
	UPnP	Mail Receiver	Receiver1 -			
	SNMP	Email Address	none			
	MULTICAST	Sender				
	REGISTER	Title	XVR ALERT			
	ALARM CENTER	Attachment				
	P2P	Authentication	NONE			
		Interval	120	Sec.		
		Health Enable				
		Interval	60	Min.		
		Test			Apply	Back

Figure 5-208

Stop 2	Configure the cottings	for the email	noromotoro	See Table 5 61
<u>Step z</u>	Configure the settings		parameters.	

Parameter	Description		
Enable	Enable the email function.		
SMTP Server	Enter the address of SMTP server of sender's email account.		
Port	Enter the port value of SMTP server. The default value setting is		
FUIL	25. You can enter the value according to your actual situation.		
User Name	Enter the user name and nassword of conder's small account		
Password	Enter the user name and password of sender's email account.		
Anonymity	If enable the anonymity function, you can login as anonymity.		
	In the Mail Receiver list, select the number of receiver that you		
Mail Receiver	want to receive the notification. The Device supports up to three		
	mail receivers.		
Email Address	Enter the email address of mail receiver(s).		
Sender	Enter the sender's email address. It supports maximum three		
Sender	senders separated by comma.		
	Enter the email subject.		
Title	Supports Chinese, English and Arabic numerals. It supports		
	maximum 64 characters.		
Attachment	Enable the attachment function. When there is an alarm event, the		
Allaciment	system can attach snapshots as an attachment to the email.		
	Select the encryption type: NONE, SSL, or TLS.		
Authentication	D NOTE		
	For SMTP server, the default encryption type is TLS .		

Parameter	Description
	This is the interval that the system sends an email for the same
	type of alarm event, which means, the system does not send an
Interval (Sec.)	email upon any alarm event.
	This setting helps to avoid the large amount of emails caused by
	frequent alarm events.
	The value ranges from 0 to 3600. 0 means that there is no interval.
Health Enable	Enable the health test function. The system can send a test email
Health Enable	to check the connection.
	This is the interval that the system sends a health test email.
Interval (Min.)	The value ranges from 30 to 1440. 0 means that there is no
	interval.
	Click Test to test the email sending function. If the configuration is
	correct, the receiver's email account will receive the email.
Test	NOTE NOTE
	Before testing, click Apply to save the settings.
	Table 5 61

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

5.15.1.8 Configuring UPnP Settings

You can map the relationship between the LAN and the WAN to access the Device on the LAN through the IP address on the WAN.

Preparation for Configuration

- Login the router to set the WAN port to enable the IP address to connect into the WAN.
- Enable the UPnP function at the router.
- Connect the Device with the LAN port on the router to connect into the LAN.
- Select Main Menu > NETWORK > TCP/IP, configure the IP address into the router IP address range, or enable the DHCP function to obtain an IP address automatically.

Configuration Steps

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > NETWORK > UPnP. The UPnP interface is displayed. See Figure 5-209.

	NETWORK								LIVE	L .	, <u>P</u> Q
	TCP/IP	PAT									
	CONNECTION	Status		Offline							
	Wi-Fi	LAN IF									
	3G/4G										
	PPPoE	WAN I PAT T									
	DDNS	7	Service Name		Protocol	Int.Port	Ext.Port	Edit			
	EMAIL		HTTP		TCP						
>	UPnP		TCP		TCP	37777	37777				
			UDP		UDP	37778	37778				
	SNMP		RTSP		UDP	554	554				
	MULTICAST		RTSP		TCP	554	554				
	REGISTER		SNMP		UDP	161	161				
	REGISTER		HTTPS		TCP	443	443				
	ALARM CENTER										
	P2P										
									Apply	В	lack

Figure 5-209

Step 2 Configure the settings for the UPr	
Sten 7 Lontiduire the settings for the LIP	ne narameters see lanie 5-62

Parameter	Description			
PAT	Enable the UPnP function.			
	Indicates the status of UPnP function.			
Status	Offline: Failed.			
	Online: Succeeded.			
	Enter IP address of router on the LAN.			
LAN IP	NOTE NOTE			
	After mapping succeeded, the system obtains IP address			
	automatically without performing any configurations.			
	Enter IP address of router on the WAN.			
WANIP	NOTE NOTE			
	After mapping succeeded, the system obtains IP address			
	automatically without performing any configurations.			

 router. Service Name: Name of network server. Protocol: Type of protocol. Int. Port: Internal port that is mapped on the Device. Ext. Port: External port that is mapped on the router. NOTE To avoid the conflict, when setting the external port, try to use the ports from 1024 through 5000 and avoid popular ports from 1 through 255 and system ports from 256 through 1023 When there are several devices in the LAN, please reasonab arrange the ports mapping to avoid mapping to the same external port. 	Parameter	Description
mapping ports are not occupied or limited.		 The settings in PAT table correspond to the UPnP PAT table on the router. Service Name: Name of network server. Protocol: Type of protocol. Int. Port: Internal port that is mapped on the Device. Ext. Port: External port that is mapped on the router. NOTE To avoid the conflict, when setting the external port, try to use the ports from 1024 through 5000 and avoid popular ports from 1 through 255 and system ports from 256 through 1023. When there are several devices in the LAN, please reasonably arrange the ports mapping to avoid mapping to the same external port. When establishing a mapping relationship, please ensure the mapping ports are not occupied or limited. The internal and external ports of TCP and UDP must be the same and cannot be modified.

Step 3 Click Apply to complete the settings.

In the browser, enter http://WAN IP: External IP port. You can visit the LAN Device.

5.15.1.9 Configuring SNMP Settings

Not all models support this function.

You can connect the Device with some software such as MIB Builder and MG-SOFT MIB Browser to manage and control the Device from the software.

Preparation for Configuration

- Install the software that can manage and control the SNMP, such as MIB Builder and MG-SOFT MIB Browser
- Obtain the MIB files that correspond to the current version from the technical support.

Configuration Steps

Step 1 Select Main Menu > NETWORK > SNMP.

The $\ensuremath{\mathsf{SNMP}}$ interface is displayed. See Figure 5-210.

	🚱 NETWORK				LIVE	💄 💽 🗸 👰
	TCP/IP	Enable				
	CONNECTION	Version	V1 V2	✓ V3 (Recommended)		
	Wi-Fi	SNMP Port	161			
		Read Community				
	PPPoE	Write Community				
	DDNS	Trap Address				
	EMAIL	Trap Port	162			
	UPnP	Read Only User	Public	Read/Write User	Private	
>	SNMP	Authentication Type	MD5	 Authentication Type 	MD5	~
	MULTICAST	Authentication Pa		Authentication Pa		
	REGISTER	Encryption Type	CBC-DES	 Encryption Type 	CBC-DES	~
	ALARM CENTER	Encryption Password		Encryption Password		
	P2P					
					Apply	Back

Figure 5-210

Sten 2	Configure the	settings for th	e SNMP parameters	See Table 5-63
	Configure the	settings for th	e onnini parametera	

Parameter	Description
Enable	Enable the SNMP function.
	Select the check box of SNMP version(s) that you are using.
Version	NOTE NOTE
	The default version is V3 . There is a risk of select V1 or V2.
SNMP Port	Indicates the monitoring port on the agent program.
Read Community	Indicates the read/write strings supported by the agent program.
Write Community	indicates the read/white strings supported by the agent program.
Trap Address	Indicates the destination address for the agent program to send the
	Trap information.
Trap Port	Indicates the destination port for the agent program to send the
	Trap information.
Read Only User	Enter the user name that is allowed to access the Device and has
	the "Read Only" permission.
Read/Write User	Enter the user name that is allowed to access the Device and has
	the "Read and Write" permission.
Authentication Type	Includes MD5 and SHA. The system recognizes automatically.
Authentication	
Password	Enter the password for authentication type and encryption type.
Encryption	The password should be no less than eight characters.
Password	

Parameter	Description
Encryption Type	In the Encryption Type list, select an encryption type. The default
спотурной туре	setting is CBC-DES.

- <u>Step 3</u> Compile the two MIB files by MIB Builder.
- <u>Step 4</u> Run MG-SOFT MIB Browser to load in the module from compilation.
- <u>Step 5</u> On the MG-SOFT MIB Browser, enter the Device IP that you want to manage, and then select the version number to query.
- <u>Step 6</u> On the MG-SOFT MIB Browser, unfold the tree-structured directory to obtain the configurations of the Device, such as the channels quantity and software version.

5.15.1.10 Configuring Multicast Settings

When you access the Device from the network to view the video, if the access is exceeded, the video will not display. You can use the multicast function to group the IP to solve the problem. <u>Step 1</u> Select **Main Menu > NETWORK > MULTICAST**.

	🚱 NETWORK			LIVE	
	TCP/IP	Enable			
	CONNECTION	IP Address	239 . 255 . 42 . 42		
	Wi-Fi	Port	36666		
	3G/4G				
	PPPoE				
	DDNS				
	EMAIL				
	UPnP				
	SNMP				
>	MULTICAST				
	REGISTER				
	ALARM CENTER				
	P2P				
				 Apply	Back
				Apply	Баск

The **MULTICAST** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-211.

Figure 5-211

Step 2	Configure the settings	for the multicast	parameters. See	Table 5-64.
	oorinigaro aro ooranigo		parameterer 000	10010 0 0 11

Parameter	Description
Enable	Enable the multicast function.
IP Address	Enter the IP address that you want to use as the multicast IP.
IF Addless	The IP address ranges from 224.0.0.0 through 239.255.255.255.

Dort	Enter the port for the multicast. The port ranges from 1025 through
Port	65000.

Step 3 Click Apply to complete the settings.

You can use the multicast IP address to login the web.

On the web login dialog box, in the **Type** list, select **MULTICAST**. The web will automatically obtain the multicast IP address and join. Then you can view the video through multicast function.

5.15.1.11 Configuring Register Settings

You can register the Device into the specified proxy server which acts as the transit to make it easier for the client software to access the Device.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > NETWORK > REGISTER.

The **REGISTER** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-212.

	🚱 NETWORK			LIVE	
	TCP/IP	Enable			
	CONNECTION	No.	1 -		
	Wi-Fi	Server IP Address	0.0.0.0		
	3G/4G	Port	8000		
	PPPoE	Sub Device ID	0		
	DDNS				
	EMAIL				
	UPnP				
	SNMP				
	MULTICAST				
>	REGISTER				
	ALARM CENTER				
	P2P				
					Deale
				Apply	Back

Figure 5-212

	Step 2	Configure the	settings for the	e register parameters	. See Table 5-65.
--	--------	---------------	------------------	-----------------------	-------------------

Parameter	ter Description				
Enable Enable the register function.					
Server IP Address	Enter the server IP address or the server domain that you want to				
Server IF Address	register to.				
Port Enter the port of the server.					
Sub Service IDThis ID is allocated by the server and used for the Device.					
	— · · · — · · ·				

Table 5-65

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

5.15.1.12 Configuring Alarm Center Settings

You can configure the alarm center server to receive the uploaded alarm information. To use this function, the **Alarm Upload** check box must be selected. For details about alarm event settings, see "5.10 Alarm Events Settings."

<u>Step 1</u>	Select Main	Menu >	NETWORK >	ALARM	CENTER.
---------------	-------------	--------	-----------	-------	---------

The ALARM CENTER interface is displayed. See Figure 5-213.

🍪 NETWORK			
TCP/IP	Enable		
CONNECTION	Protocol Type	ALARM CENTER 👻	
Wi-Fi	Host IP	192.168.0.2	
3G/4G	Port	1	
PPPoE	Self-Report Time	All • 08:00 •	
DDNS			
EMAIL			
UPnP			
SNMP			
MULTICAST			
REGISTER			
> ALARM CENTER			
P2P			
			Apply Back

Figure 5-213

Step 2 Configure the settings for the alarm center parameters. See Table 5-66.

Parameter	Description		
Enable	Enable the alarm center function.		
Drotocol Turno	In the Protocol Type list, select protocol type. The default is		
Protocol Type	ALARM CENTER.		
Host IP	The IP address and communication port of the PC installed with		
Port	alarm client.		
Solf Depart Time	In the Self-Report Time list, select time cycle and specific time for		
Self-Report Time	uploading alarm.		
	_ · · ·		

Table 5-66

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

5.15.1.13 Configuring P2P Settings

You can manage the devices by using P2P technology to download the application and register the devices. For details, see "5.1.4.5 Configuring P2P Settings."

5.15.2 Configuring Network Testing Settings

5.15.2.1 Testing the Network

You can test the network connection status between the Device and other devices.

```
<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > INFO > NETWORK > Test.
```

The **Test** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-214.

	🚹 INFO					LIVE	
	VERSION	Online User	Network Load	Network Test			
	LOG	Network Test					
	EVENT	Destination IP					
	NETWORK	Test Result					
	HDD						
	CHANNEL INFO	Network Sniffer P	acket Backup				
	BPS	Device Name	sdb5(USB DISK)			Refresh
		Address					Browse
		Name	IP	Sr	niffer Packet Size	Sniffer Packet	Backup
		LAN1	192.168	.20.13	0KB		

Figure 5-214

<u>Step 2</u> In the **Destination IP** box, enter the IP address.

Step 3 Click Test.

After testing is completed, the test result is displayed. You can check the evaluation for average delay, packet loss, and network status. See Figure 5-215.

	INFO				LIVE	
	VERSION	Online User	Network Load Network	Test		
	LOG	Network Test				
	EVENT	Destination IP	192.168.20.13			
>	NETWORK	Test Result	Average Delay:1.0ms Pag	ket Loss Rate:0% Network S	Status:OK	
	HDD					
	CHANNEL INFO	Network Sniffer P	Packet Backup			
	BPS	Device Name	sdb5(USB DISK)			Refresh
		Address				Browse
		Name	IP	Sniffer Packet Size	Sniffer Packe	t Backup
		LAN1	192.168.20.13	0KB		

Figure 5-215

5.15.2.2 Capturing Packet and Backing up

Packet capture means the operations such as capturing, resending, and editing data that are sent and received during network transmission. When there is network abnormality, you can perform packet capturing and back up into the USB storage device. This date can be provided to the technical support for analyzing the network condition.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > INFO > NETWORK > Network Test.

The Network Test interface is displayed. See Figure 5-216.

	INFO					LIVE	
	VERSION	Online User N	etwork Load	Network Test			
	LOG	Network Test					
	EVENT	Destination IP					
>	NETWORK	Test Result					
	HDD						
	CHANNEL INFO	Network Sniffer Pac	ket Backup				
	BPS	Device Name	sdb5(USB DISK)				Refresh
		Address					Browse
		Name	IP	Sniffer P	Packet Size Sniffe	Packet	t Backup
		LAN1	192.168.	20.13 0	КВ		

Figure 5-216

- <u>Step 2</u> Connect a USB storage device to the Device.
- Step 3 Click Refresh.

The Device starts detecting the USB storage device and displays its name in the **Device Name** box.

- <u>Step 4</u> Select the route of the data that you want to capture and back up.
 - 1) In the **Network Sniffer Packet Backup** area, click **Browse**.

The **Browse** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-217.

Brow	rse						
	Device Name	sda5(USB DISK)	 Refres 	sh			
	Total Space	15.60 GB					
	Free Space	15.60 GB					
	Address						
	Name		Size	Туре	Delete	Play	
	🗅 IP			Folder	ā		
	RemoteConfig_20	171103141044.csv	464 B	File	ā		
	printf_201711051	72349.txt	451.3 KB	File	ā		
	kmsg_printf_2017	1105172349.txt	14.9 KB	File	ā		
	New Folder				OK	Back	

Figure 5-217

2) Select the route.

- If there are several USB storage devices are connected to the Device, you can select from the **Device Name** list.
- Click Refresh to total space, free space and the file list in the selected USB storage device.
- In the case of insufficient capacity, click
 to delete the needless files.
- Click **New Folder** to create a new folder in the USB storage device.
- Click Apply to save the route selection settings. The Test interface is displayed again.

Step 5 Click to start packet capturing and backing up.

- Only the data packet of one LAN can be captured at one time.
- After capturing starts, you can exit the **Test** interface to perform other operations such as web login and monitoring.

Step 6 Click

to stop capturing.

The backup data is saved in the selected route under the naming style "LAN name-time.pcap." See Figure 5-218. You can open it by using Wireshark software.

Brow	vse					
	Device Name	sda5(USB DISK)	Refres	sh		
	Total Space	15.60 GB				
	Free Space	15.60 GB				
	Address	1				
	Name		Size	Туре	Delete	Play
	D IP			Folder	亩	
	RemoteConfig_20	171103141044.csv	464 B	File	茴	
	📄 printf_201711051	72349.txt	451.3 KB	File	亩	
	kmsg_printf_2017	1105172349.txt	14.9 KB	File	 큡	
	🗎 LAN1-2017110713	35215.pcap	1.18 MB	File	茴	
	New Folder				ОК	Back

Figure 5-218

5.16 Configuring Account Settings

You can add, modify and delete user accounts, groups, and ONVIF users, and set security questions for admin account.

- The user name supports 31 characters and group name supports 15 characters. The user name can be consisted of letter, number, " ", "@", ".".
- You can set maximum 64 users and 20 groups. The group name by "User" and "Admin" cannot be deleted. You can set other groups and define the relevant permissions. However, the admin account cannot be set randomly.
- You can manage the account by user and group and the name cannot be repeated. Every user must belong to a group, and one user only belongs to one group.

5.16.1 Configuring User Account

5.16.1.1 Adding a User Account

Step 1 Select Main Menu > ACCOUNT > USER.

The USER interface is displayed. See Figure 5-219.

	ACCOUNT								LIVE	<u>.</u>	🔁 🗸 🛄
> (JSER										
	GROUP		User Name		Modify		MAC A	Memo			
			admin	admin		Login Local		admin 's ac			
(ONVIF USER										
		Add U	Iser								

Figure 5-219

Step 2 Click Add User.

The **Add User** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-220.

Add User					
User Name					
Password			Confirm Password		
Memo			User MAC		
Group adm	in 👻				
Period	Setting				
Authority					
System P	layback Monitor				
🔽 All					
ACCOUN		STEM	SYSTEM INFO	MANUAL CONTROL	
STORAGI			NETWORK DEVICE MAINTENANCE	CAMERA	
SECORI		NCKUP			
				ОК	Back

Figure 5-220

Step 3 Configure the settings for the parameters of adding a user account. See Table 5-67.

Parameter	Description
User Name	Enter a user name and neceword for the appount
Password	Enter a user name and password for the account.
Confirm Password	Re-enter the password.

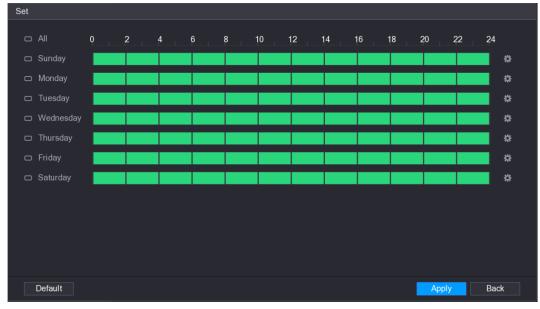
Parameter	Description				
Memo	Optional.				
Wemo	Enter a description of the account.				
User MAC	Enter user MAC address				
	Select a group for the account.				
Group	NOTE NOTE				
	The user rights must be within the group permission.				
	Click Set to display Set interface.				
Period	Define a period during which the new account can login the device.				
Fellou	The new account cannot login the device during the time beyond				
	the set period.				
	In the Authority area, select the check boxes in the System tab,				
	Playback tab, and Monitor tab.				
Authority	NOTE NOTE				
Additionity	To manage the user account easily, when defining the user				
	account authority, it is recommended not to give the authority to the				
	common user account higher that the advanced user account.				
	Table 5-67				

<u>Step 4</u> Click **OK** to complete the settings.

Setting Permitted Period



The Set interface is displayed. See Figure 5-221.





<u>Step 2</u> Define the permitted period. By default, it is active all the time.

- Define the period by drawing.
 - ◇ Define for a specified day of a week: On the timeline, click the half-hour blocks to select the active period.

switches to . On the timeline of any selected day, click the half-hour blocks

to select the active periods, all the days with 🔤 will take the same settings.

- Define the period by editing. Take Sunday as an example.

the days will take the same settings.

1) Click 🛄.

The **Period** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-222.

Period	
Current Date:	Sunday
Period 1	00:00 - 24:00
Period 2	00:00 - 24:00
Period 3	00:00 - 24:00
Period 4	00:00 - 24:00
Period 5	00:00 - 24:00
Period 6	00:00 - 24:00
Сору	
🖂 Sunday	🗌 Monday 🔄 Tuesday 📄 Wednesday 📄 Thursday 📄 Friday 📄 Saturday
	OK Back

Figure 5-222

- 2) Enter the time frame for the period and select the check box to enable the settings.
 - \diamond There are six periods for you to set for each day.
 - ◇ Under Copy, select All to apply the settings to all the days of a week, or select specific day(s) that you want to apply the settings to.
- 3) Click **OK** to save the settings.

Step 3 Click OK.

5.16.1.2 Modify a User Account

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ACCOUNT > USER.

The **USER** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-223.

	🔔 ACCOUNT							LIVE	•	
	USER						 			
	GROUP		User Name admin	Group admin	Modify	Status Login Local	Memo admin 's ac	count		
	ONVIF USER					LUgin Lucai	aummisau	count		
	ONVIT USEN									
		Add L	lser							
		Auuit								
									E,	

Figure 5-223

<u>Step 2</u> Click for the user account that you want to modify. The **Modify User** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-224.

Modify User			
User Name	admin 👻	User MAC	
Modify Password		Email Address	2***@qq.com
Old Password		Group	
New Password		Memo	
Confirm Password		Unlock Pattern	— 6
Prompt Question	1	Security Quest	ions
Authority			
System Play	vback Monitor		
☑ AII ☑ ACCOUNT ☑ STORAGE ☑ SECURITY	☑ SYSTEM ☑ EVENT ☑ BACKUP	✓ SYSTEM INFO✓ NETWORK✓ DEVICE MAINTENA	MANUAL CONTROL CAMERA NCE
			OK Back

Figure 5-224

<u>Step 3</u> Change the settings for password, user name, user group, user MAC, memo, period, and authority.

The new password can be set from 8 digits through 32 digits and contains at least two types from number, letter and special characters (excluding"'", """, ";", ":" and "&").

For the admin account, you can enter or modify email address, enable/disable the unlock pattern, modify the security questions.

- In the **Email Address** box, enter the email address, and the click **Save** to save the setting.
- To use the unlock pattern, enable **Unlock Pattern**, click **I**, draw a pattern in the **Unlock Pattern** interface, and then click **Save** to save the setting.
- Configuring security questions.
- 1) Click Security Questions.

The **Security Questions** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-225.

Security Questi	ons
Successfull	y set. Please delete it first if you want to reset security question!again.
Question 1 Answer	
Question 2 Answer	
Question 3 Answer	
	Setting Delete

Figure 5-225

- 2) In the **Question** list, select questions and enter the answers in the Answer box.
- Click Setting to save the settings. You can use the security questions and answers to reset the password for admin account.

To reset the security questions, on the **Security Questions**, enter the correct answers for each question, and then click **Delete**.

<u>Step 4</u> Click **OK** to complete the settings.

5.16.1.3 Deleting a User Account

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ACCOUNT > USER.

The **USER** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-226.

	🔔 account							LIVE	<u>*</u>	
:	USER						 			
	GROUP		User Nam admin	e Group admin	Modify	Status Login Local	Memo admin 's acc			
	ONVIF USER		aumm	aunin		LUgin Lucai	aumin s acc	Journ		
	UNVIF USEN									
		۸dd	User							
		Auu	USEI							

Figure 5-226

Step 2 Click for the user account that you want to delete. A **Message** is displayed.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **OK** to delete a user account.

5.16.2 Configuring Group Account

5.16.2.1 Adding a Group

Step 1 Select Main Menu > ACCOUNT > GROUP.

The **GROUP** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-227.

	上 ACCOUNT						
	USER						
		2	Group Name	Modify	Delete	Memo	
>	GROUP		admin			administrator group	
	ONVIF USER		user	ľ	ā	user group	
		Add	àroup				

Figure 5-227

Step 2 Click Add Group.

The Add Group interface is displayed. See Figure 5-228.

Add Group			
Group Name Memo Authority			
System Playback	Monitor		
All ACCOUNT STORAGE SECURITY	SYSTEM EVENT BACKUP	SYSTEM INFO NETWORK DEVICE MAINTENANCE	MANUAL CONTROL CAMERA
			OK Back

Figure 5-228

Step 3	Configure the settings	for the parameters	of adding a group. S	ee Table 5-68.
--------	------------------------	--------------------	----------------------	----------------

Parameter	Description				
Group Name	Enter a name for the group.				
Memo	Optional.				
Memo	Enter a description of the account.				

Parameter	Description				
Authority	In the Authority area, select the check boxes in the System tab,				
Authority	Playback tab, and Monitor tab.				

<u>Step 4</u> Click **OK** to complete the settings.

5.16.2.2 Modifying a Group

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ACCOUNT > GROUP.

The **GROUP** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-229.

💄 ACCOUNT							
USER							
> GROUP	2 Group Name	Modify	Delete	Memo			
	1 admin			administrator group			
ONVIF USER	2 user	Î.	ā	user group			
	Add Group						

Figure 5-229

<u>Step 2</u> Click for the group account that you want to modify.

Step 3 The Modify Group interface is displayed. See Figure 5-230.

Modify Group			
Group	user -		
Group Name	user		
Memo	user group		
Authority			
System Playba	ack Monitor		
AII ACCOUNT STORAGE SECURITY	SYSTEM EVENT BACKUP	SYSTEM INFO NETWORK DEVICE MAINTENANCE	MANUAL CONTROL
			OK Back

Figure 5-230

<u>Step 4</u> Change the settings for group name, memo, and authority. <u>Step 5</u> Click **OK** to complete the settings.

5.16.2.3 Deleting a Group

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ACCOUNT > GROUP.

The **GROUP** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-231.

	💄 ACCOUNT						LIVE	1
	USER							
>	GROUP		2	Group Name	Modify	Delete	Memo	
ŕ				admin			administrator group	
	ONVIF USER			user	i	ā	user group	
		4	Add G	iroup				

Figure 5-231

Step 2 Click for the user account that you want to delete.

A Message is displayed.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **OK** to delete a group.

5.16.3 Configuring Onvif Users

The device manufactured by other company can connect to the Device through Onvif protocol by an authorized Onvif account.

NOTE

The admin account is created for Onvif users right after the Device has been initialized <u>Step 1</u> Select **Main Menu > ACCOUNT > ONVIF USER**.

The **ONVIF USER** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-232.

	🔔 🚓 ACCOUNT					LIVE	
	USER						
	GROUP	1	User Name	Group Name	Modify	Delete	
			admin	admin			
>	ONVIF USER						
		Add l	lear				
		Auu					

Figure 5-232

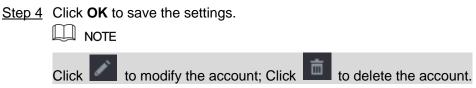
Step 2 Click Add User.

The Add User interface is displayed. See Figure 5-233.

Add User			
User			123
Password			
Confirm Password			
Group	admin		
		OK	Back

Figure 5-233

<u>Step 3</u> Enter user name, password, and select the group that you want this account to belong to.



5.17 Audio Management

Audio management function manages audio files and configures the playing schedule. When there is an alarm event, the audio file can be activated.

5.17.1 Configuring Audio Files

You can add audio files, listen to audio files, rename and delete audio files, and configure the audio volume.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > AUDIO > FILE MANAGER.

The FILE MANAGER interface is displayed. See Figure 5-234.

AUDIO						🕈 🗸 员
SCHEDULE			21	-		
> FILE MANAGER	0 File Name	Size	Play	Rename	Delete	
	VOICE : HDD Mode		Volume		_	+
			volume		Add	
					Add	

Figure 5-234

Step 2 Click Add.

The Add interface is displayed. See Figure 5-235.

\dd										
Device Name	sdb5(USB DISK)	Refresh								
Total Space	15.60 GB									
Free Space	15.59 GB									
Address /										
Name		Size	Туре	Delete	•					
IP			Folder	前						
FSU6016U			Folder	茴						
📄 RemoteConfig_20	171103141044.csv	464 B	File	亩						
📄 📄 printf_2017110517	/2349.txt	451.3 KB	File	亩						
📄 kmsg_printf_2017	1105172349.txt	14.9 KB	File	亩						
🗌 🗎 LAN1-2017110713	5215.pcap	1.18 MB	File	亩						
E LAN1-2017110913	5008.pcap	9.16 MB	File	ā						
📄 🗈 softmusic.mp3		2.14 MB	File	亩	•					
OK Back										
	Figur	e 5-235								

 $\underline{Step \ 3}$ Select the audio files that you want to import.

<u>Step 4</u> Click **OK** to start importing audio files from the USB storage device.

If the importing is successful, the audio files will display in the **FILE MANAGER** interface. See Figure 5-236.

	AUDIO										/E	. 🕞	- D.D
	SCHEDULE												
>	FILE MANAGER			File Name	Size		Play	Re	name		Dele		
ŕ	FILE MANAGER		1	softmusic.mp3	2.14 MB		\odot		ľ		Ō		
		VOICE		: HDD Mode			Volume			-0		+	
											A	٨dd	
_													



The imported audio files are automatically saved into the HDD, so you do not need to connect to the USB storage device to get the file next time.

- Click to play the audio file.
- Click to rename the audio file.
- Click to delete the audio file.
- To decrease or increase the playing volume, move the slider to the left or to the right.

5.17.2 Configuring Playing Schedule for Audio Files

You can configure the settings to play the audio files during the defined time period.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > AUDIO > SCHEDULE.

The **SCHEDULE** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-237.

> SCHEDULE Period File Name Interval Repeat Output 0 0 0 0 - 24 00 None 60 Min 0 Mic 10 0 0 0 0 - 24 00 None 60 Min 0 Mic 10 0 0 0 0 - 24 00 None 60 Min 0 Mic 10 0 0 0 - 24 00 None 60 Min 0 Mic 10 0 0 0 - 24 00 None 60 Min 0 Mic 10 0 0 0 0 - 24 00 None 60 Min 0 Mic 10 0 0 0 0 - 24 00 None 60 Min 0 Mic 10 0 0 0 0 - 24 00 None 60 Min 0 Mic 10	AUDIO						LIV	E	
FILE MANAGER 00:00 - 24:00 None 60 Min. 0 Mic * 00:00 - 24:00 None 60 Min. 0 Mic * 00:00 - 24:00 None 60 Min. 0 Mic * 00:00 - 24:00 None 60 Min. 0 Mic * 00:00 - 24:00 None 60 Min. 0 Mic * 00:00 - 24:00 None 60 Min. 0 Mic *	> SCHEDULE	Period		File Name	Interva	al	Repeat	Output	
00:00 - 24:00 None 60 Min. 0 Mic • 00:00 - 24:00 None 60 Min. 0 Mic • 00:00 - 24:00 None 60 Min. 0 Mic • 00:00 - 24:00 None 60 Min. 0 Mic •	FILE MANAGER	00:00	- 24 : 00	None					~
00:00 - 24:00 None 60 Min. 0 Mic * 00:00 - 24:00 None 60 Min. 0 Mic *		00:00	- 24 : 00	None	60	Min.	0	Mic	~
00:00 - 24:00 None 60 Min. 0 Mic •		00:00	- 24 : 00	None	- 60	Min.	0	Mic	~
		00:00	- 24 : 00	None	- 60	Min.	0	Mic	
00:00 - 24:00 None * 60 Min. 0 Mic *		00 : 00	- 24 : 00	None	60	Min.	0	Mic	
		00:00	- 24 : 00	None	60	Min.	0	Mic	
Apply Back							Apply		Back

Figure 5-237

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the schedule parameters. See Table 5-69.

Parameter	Description				
	In the Period box, enter the time. Select the check box to enable				
Period	the settings.				
	You can configure up to six periods.				
File Name	In the File Name list, select the audio file that you want to play for				
	this configured period.				
Interval	In the Interval box, enter the time in minutes for how often you				
Interval	want to repeat the playing.				
Repeat	Configure how many times you want to repeat the playing in the				
Кереаі	defined period.				
	Includes two options: MIC and Audio. It is MIC by default. The MIC				
Output	function shares the same port with talkback function and the latter				
	has the priority.				

Table 5-69

- The finish time for audio playing is decided by audio file size and the configured interval.
- Playing priority: Alarm event > Talkback > Trial listening > Audio file.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

5.18 Storage Management

Storage management function manages the stored resources such as recorded video files and storage space. The function aims at providing easier operation and improving the storage efficiency.

5.18.1 Configuring Basic Settings

Step 1 Select Main Menu > STORAGE > BASIC.

The **BASIC** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-238.

	STORAGE					LIVE	. .		
>	BASIC		Overwrite						
>		HDD Full Pack Mode Auto-Delete Old Files	Overwrite Time Length Never	60	Min.				
						Apply		Back	

Figure 5-238

Ctop 2	Configura the	aatting and far the	a haala aattinga	noromotoro	See Table 5-70.
SIEDZ	Connoure me	seuinas ior in	e dasic settinos	parameters.	See Table $5-70$.
0.00	• • • · · · · g • · · • • · · •	setunge tet un		P 41 41 10 10 10 10	

Parameter	Description				
	Configure the settings for the situation all the read/write discs are				
	full, and there is no more free disc.				
HDD Full	Select Stop Record to stop recording				
	Select Overwrite to overwrite the recorded video files				
	always from the earliest time.				
Pack Mode	Configure the time length and file length for each recorded video.				
Auto-Delete Old Files	Configure whether to delete the old files and if yes, configure the				
Auto-Delete Old Files	days.				

Table 5-70

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

5.18.2 Configuring the Recording and Snapshot Schedule

The system starts recording and taking snapshot according to the configured schedule. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.1.4.10 Configuring Snapshot Storage Schedule."

5.18.3 Configuring HDD Manager

You can view the HDD information, format HDD, and configure the HDD type through HDD manager.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > STORAGE > HDD MANAGER.

The HDD MANAGER interface is displayed. See Figure 5-239.

In the table, you can view the information of current HDD, such as device name, HDD type, status, total space and free space, and serial number of the HDD port.

	E STORAGE							LIVE	
	BASIC		44			Discosi e e l. De estri e re			5 0
	SCHEDULE		1* All	De	evice Name	Physical Position	Туре	Health status	Free Sr 0.00
>	HDD MANAGER				sda	main board-1	Read/Write 👻	Normal	0.00
	HDD DETECT								
	REC ESTIMATE								
	FTP								
			Refr	esh	Format			Apply	Back

Figure 5-239

Step 2 Configuring the settings for the HDD manager.

- HDD type setting: In the **Type** list, select **Read/Write**, **Read-Only** or **Redundant**, and then click **Apply** to save the settings.
- HDD format: Select the HDD that you want to format, click **Format**, in the pop-up message, click **OK** to start formatting, and then following the onscreen message to complete formatting.

5.18.4 Configuring HDD Detecting Settings

Not all models support this function.

HDD detecting function detects the current status of HDD to let you know the HDD performance and replace the defective HDD.

5.18.4.1 Detecting HDD

You can detect HDD by key area detect and global detect.

- Key area detect: Detect the files saved in HDD. The detected bad track can be repaired by formatting. If there are no files in HDD, the system cannot detect the bad track.
- Global detect: Detect the whole HDD through Windows, which takes time and might affect the HDD that is recording the video.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > STORAGE > HDD DETECT > Detect.

 BASIC
 Detect
 Report

 SCHEDULE
 Type
 Key Area Detect
 HDD
 Select HDD(s)
 Start Detect
 Book

 HDD DETECT
 Good
 Bad
 Block
 Block

The **Detect** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-240.

Figure 5-240

<u>Step 2</u> In the **Type** list, select **Key Area Detect** or **Global Detect**; and in the **HDD** list, select the HDD that you want to detect.

Step 3 Click Start Detect.

The system starts detecting the HDD. After detecting is completed, see Figure 5-241.

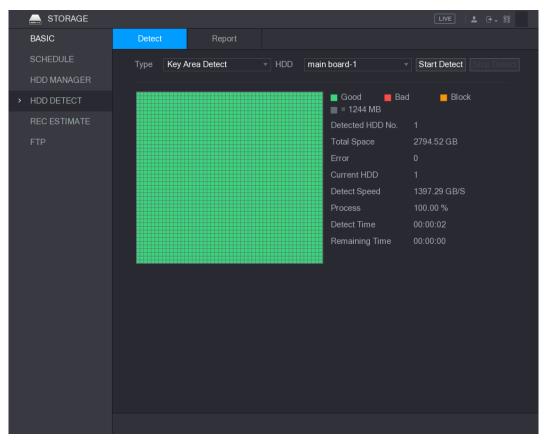


Figure 5-241

5.18.4.2 View Detecting Results

After the detecting is completed, you can view the detecting reports to find out the problem and replace the defective HDD to avoid data loss.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > STORAGE > HDD DETECT > Report.

The **Report** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-242.

	STORAGE					LIVE	
	BASIC	Dete	ect	Report			
	SCHEDULE		HDD Port No.		Start Time	Capacity	Er
	HDD MANAGER		main board-1	Key Area Detect	2018-01-30 15:36:11	2794.52 GB	
>	HDD DETECT						
	REC ESTIMATE FTP						

Figure 5-242

Step 2 Click

The Details interface is displayed. You can view detecting results and S.M.A.R.T reports. See Figure 5-243 and Figure 5-244.

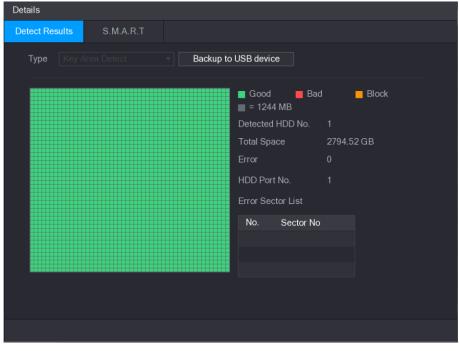


Figure 5-243

Deta	ails						
Det	ect Results	S.M.A.R.T					
	Port						
	Model	WDCWD30EURX63T0F	=Y0				
	No.	WDWMC4N0428917					
	Status	HDD state is good					
	Describe:						
	Smart ID	Attribute	Threshold	Value	Worst Value	Current Value	÷.
		Read Error Rate	51	200	200		
		Spin Up Time	21	238	176	3083	
		Start/Stop Count				5041	
		Reallocated Sector Count	140	200	200		
		Seek Error Rate		200	200		
	4						

Figure 5-244

5.18.5 Configuring Record Estimate

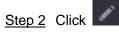
Record estimate function can calculate how long you can record video according to the HDD capacity, and calculate the required HDD capacity according to the record period.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > STORAGE > REC ESTIMATE.

The **REC ESTIMATE** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-245.

STORAGE						
BASIC						
	✓ Channel	Edit	Bit Rate(Kb/S)	Record Time	Resolution	Frame Rate
SCHEDULE			2048		2560x1440(4MP)	
HDD MANAGER		ľ	2048	24	1920x1080(1080P)	
HDD DETECT			2048		2560x1440(4MP)	
		ľ	2048	24	2560x1440(4MP)	
REC ESTIMATE			2048		2560x1440(4MP)	
FTP			2048	24	2560x1440(4MP)	
			2048		2560x1440(4MP)	
			2048	24	2560x1440(4MP)	
		_				
	Known Spac	e Knov	vn Time			
	Capacity	0		TB = 0	GB Sel	ect
	Time			Days		
	Note: The re	cord esti	mation data here is	for reference on	y. Please be cautious	when you are
	calculating r	ecord pei	riod.			

Figure 5-245





The Edit dialog box is displayed. See Figure 5-246.

You can configure the resolution, frame rate, bit rate and record time for the selected channel.

Edit				
Channel	1			
Resolution	2560*1440(2	560x1440) 🔻		
Frame Rate	15			
Bit Rate	4096	(32 - 6144)Kb	/S	
Record Time	24			
Сору		OK		Back

Figure 5-246

Step 3 Click OK to save the settings.

Then the system will calculate the time period that can be used for storage according to the channels settings and HDD capacity.

Click Copy to copy the settings to other channels.

Calculating Recording Time

Step 1 On the **REC ESTIMATE** interface, click the **Known Space** tab.

The Known Space interface is displayed. See Figure 5-247.

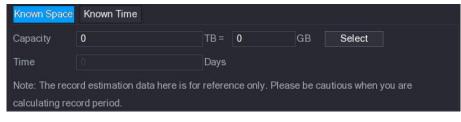


Figure 5-247

Step 2 Click Select.

The Select HDD(s) interface is displayed.

Step 3 Select the check box of the HDD that you want to calculate.

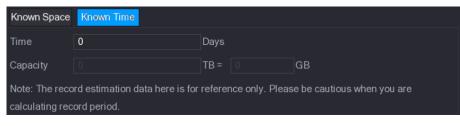
In the **Known Space** tab, in the **Time** box, the recording time is displayed. See Figure 5-248.

Known Space	Known Time							
Capacity	7	TB =	7000	GB	Select			
Time		Days						
Note: The record estimation data here is for reference only. Please be cautious when you are								
calculating rec	cord period.							

Figure 5-248

Calculating HDD Capacity for Storage

<u>Step 1</u> On the **REC ESTIMATE** interface, click the **Known Time** tab. The **Known Time** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-249.





<u>Step 2</u> In the **Time** box, enter the time period that you want to record. In the **Capacity** box, the required HDD capacity is displayed. See Figure 5-250.

Known Space	Known Time							
Time	22	Days						
Capacity		TB =		GB				
Note: The record estimation data here is for reference only. Please be cautious when you are calculating record period.								

Figure 5-250

5.18.6 Configuring FTP Storage Settings

You can store and view the recorded videos and snapshots on the FTP server.

Preparation for Configuration

Purchase or download a FTP server and install it on your PC.

For the created FTP user, you need to set the write permission; otherwise the upload of recorded videos and snapshots will be failed.

Configuration Steps

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > STORAGE > FTP.

The **FTP** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-251.

STORAGE				
BASIC	Enable		TP (Recommended)	
SCHEDULE			r (Recommended)	
HDD MANAGER	Server	0.0.0.0		
ADVANCE	Port	22		
QUOTA	Anonymity			
HDD DETECT	User Name			
REC ESTIMATE	Password			
FTP	Remote Directory			
	File Length(M)	0		
	Image Upload Interval(2		
	Channel	1		
	Week Day	Tue	 Alarm Intel 	MD General
	Period 1	00:00 - 24:00		
	Period 2	00:00 - 24:00		
	Default Test			Apply Back

Figure 5-251

Stop 2	Configure the	e settings for the	FTD cottings n	arameters S	Soo Table 5-71
<u>Step z</u>	Configure the	s settings for the	i ir seunys p	alameters. C	

Parameter	Description			
Enable	Enable the FTP upload function.			
	Select FTP type.			
FTP type	FTP: Plaintext transmission.			
	SFTP: Encrypted transmission (recommended)			
Server	IP address of FTP server.			
Port	• FTP: The default is 21.			
FUIL	• SFTP: The default is 22.			
Anonymity	Enter the user name and password to login the FTP server.			
User Name	Enable the anonymity function, and then you can login			
Password	anonymously without entering the user name and password.			
	Create folder on FTP server.			
	If you do not enter the name of remote directory, system			
	automatically creates the folders according to the IP and			
Remote Directory	time.			
Remote Directory	• If you enter the name of remote directory, the system creates			
	the folder with the entered name under the FTP root			
	directory first, and then automatically creates the folders			
	according to the IP and time.			

Parameter	Description			
Parameter File Length(M) Image Upload Interval (Sec.)	 Description Enter the length of the uploaded recorded video. If the entered length is less than the recorded video length, only a section of the recorded video can be uploaded. If the entered length is more than the recorded video length, the whole recorded video can be uploaded. If the entered length is 0, the whole recorded video will be uploaded. If this interval is longer than snapshot interval, the system takes the recent snapshot to upload. For example, the interval is 5 seconds, and snapshot interval is 2 seconds per snapshot, the system uploads the recent snapshot every 5 seconds. If this interval is shorter than snapshot interval, the system uploads the snapshot per the snapshot interval. For example, the interval is 5 seconds, and snapshot interval. For example, the interval is 5 seconds, and snapshot interval. For example, the interval is 5 seconds, and snapshot interval. For example, the interval is 5 seconds, and snapshot interval. For example, the interval is 5 seconds, and snapshot interval. For example, the interval is 5 seconds, and snapshot interval. For example, the interval is 5 seconds, and snapshot interval is 10 seconds per snapshot, the system uploads the snapshot every 10 seconds. To configure the snapshot interval, select Main Menu > 			
Channel	CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot.			
	Select the channel that you want to apply the FTP settings.			
Week Day	Select the week day and set the time period that you want to			
Period 1, Period 2	upload the recorded files. You can set two periods for each week			
	day.			
	Select the record type (Alarm, Intel, MD, and General) that you			
Record type	want to upload. The selected record type will be uploaded during			
	the configured time period.			

Table 5-71

Step 3 Click Test.

The system pops up a message to indicate success or failure. If failed, please check the network connection or configurations.

<u>Step 4</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

5.19 Configuring System Settings

5.19.1 Configuring General System Settings

You can configure the device basic settings, time settings, and holiday settings.

For details about basic and time settings, see "5.1.4.2 Configuring General Settings" and "5.1.4.3 Configuring Date and Time Settings."

To configure the holiday settings, do the following:

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > GENERAL > Holiday.

The Holiday interface is displayed. See Figure 5-252.

	🗱 SYSTEM						LIVE	
>	GENERAL	General		Date&Time	Holiday			
	SECURITY		Status	Name	Date	Period	Operation	
	SYSTEM MAINTAIN							
	IMP/EXP							
	DEFAULT							
	UPGRADE							
							Add a Holiday	

Figure 5-252

Step 2 Click Add a Holiday.

The Add a Holiday interface is displayed. See Figure 5-253.

Add a Holiday					
Holiday Name					
Repeat Mode	⊖ Once		💿 Always		
Holiday Range	💿 Date		⊖ Week		
Start Time		- 11	- 09		
End Time		- 11	- 09		
Add More					
				Add	Cancel

Figure 5-253

<u>Step 3</u> Configure the holiday name, repeat mode, time range according to your actual situation.

Step 4 Click Add.

The added holiday information is displayed. See Figure 5-254.

Enable the Add More function, so you can continue adding holiday information.

	🗱 SYSTEM						LIVE	
>	GENERAL	General		Date&Time	Holiday			
	SECURITY		Status	Name	Date	Period	Operation	
	SYSTEM MAINTAIN			newyear	2017 Dec The L	7 day(s)		
	IMP/EXP							
	DEFAULT							
	UPGRADE							
							Add a Holida	4

Figure 5-254

5.19.2 Configuring Security Settings

To ensure the network security and protect data, you can configure the access permission to the Device from host IP (host IP means the PC or server that has an IP).

- White list includes the host IP that are permitted to access the Device.
- Black list includes the host IP that are not permitted to access the Device.
- Updata time white list includes the host IP that are permitted to sync the Device time.

5.19.2.1 Configuring Access Right

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > SYSTEM > SECURITY > Access Right. The Access Right interface is displayed. See Figure 5-255.

	🗱 SYSTEM						LIVE	
	GENERAL	Access Right	Password Reset					
>	SECURITY	Туре	Network	Access-Whitelist 🔻				
	SYSTEM MAINTAIN	Enable						
	IMP/EXP	Start Address				Add IP Address		
	DEFAULT	End Address				Add IP Segment		
	UPGRADE		Start Address		End Ad	droop	Edit	Delete
			Start Address		End Ad	aress	Edit	Delete
							Apply	Back

Figure 5-255

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the security parameters. See Table 5-72.

Parameter	Description
Turne	In the Type list, you can select Limits of network-whitelist, Limits
Туре	of network-blacklist, or Updata time-whitelist.
Enable	Enable the security settings.
Start Address	Enter a single IP address or a start IP address of a network
Start Address	segment.
Add IP Address	Click Add IP Address to add a single IP address.
End Address	Enter the end IP address of a network segment.
	Click Add IP Segment to add the IP addresses from the start IP
	through the end IP.
Add IP Segment	NOTE NOTE
	The system supports up to 64 IP addresses.

Table 5-72

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

5.19.2.2 Configuring System Service Settings

You can enable or disable the system internal services.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > SYSTEM > SECURITY > System Service.

The **System Service** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-256.

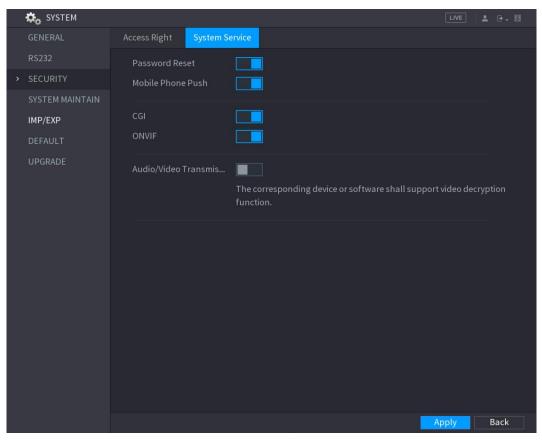


Figure 5-256

•	• • •			— · · — — •
Step 2	Configure the	parameters	For details	see Table 5-73.
	oorinigaro aro	paramotoror	i oi aotano,	

Parameter	Description
	Enable or disable the password reset function. It is enabled
	by default.
Password Reset	NOTE NOTE
	If the password reset function is disabled, you can find back
	the password by the security questions. Make sure you have configured the security questions.
	If you enable this function, the snapshots that are activated
Mobile Phone Push	by the alarm event on the Device can be sent to mobile
	phone.
	This function is enabled by default.
	If this function is enabled, the remote devices can be added
CGI	through the CGI protocol.
CGI	NOTE NOTE
	This function is enabled by default.
	If this function is enabled, the remote devices can be added
	through the ONVIF protocol.
ONVIF	D NOTE
	This function is enabled by default.
	Enable or disable the audio and video stream encryption. If
Audio/Video Transmission	enabled, make sure the devices or software support
	decryption.

5.19.3 Configuring System Maintenance Settings

When the Device has been running for a long time, you can configure the auto reboot when the Device is not working. You can also configure the case fan mode to reduce noise and extend the service life.

	🔅 SYSTEM	LIVE	
	GENERAL	Auto Reboot	
	SECURITY	Never	
>	SYSTEM MAINTAIN	Case Fan Mode	
	IMP/EXP		
	DEFAULT	Always run 🔻	
	UPGRADE		
		Apply	Back

Step 1 Select Main Menu > SYSTEM > SYSTEM MAINTAIN.

The SYSTEM MAINTAIN interface is displayed. See Figure 5-257.

Figure 5-257

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the system maintenance parameters. See Table 5-74.

Parameter	Description
Auto Reboot	In the Auto Reboot list, select the reboot time.
Case Fan Mode	In the Case Fan Mode list, you can select Always run or Auto . If you select Auto , the case fan will stop or start according to the external conditions such as the Device temperature. NOTE Not all models support this function, and it is only supported on the local configuration interface.

Table 5-74

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

5.19.4 Exporting and Importing System Settings

You can export or import the Device system settings if there are several Devices that require the same setup.

- The **IMP/EXP** interface cannot be opened if the backup operation is ongoing on the other interfaces.
- When you open the **IMP/EXP** interface, the system refreshes the devices and sets the current directory as the first root directory.
- Click Format to format the USB storage device.

Exporting System Settings

Step 1 Select Main Menu > SYSTEM > IMP/EXP.

The IMP/EXP interface is displayed. See Figure 5-258.

* .	SYSTEM			LIVE	L ⊡ - 88
	ERAL JRITY EM MAINTAIN	Device Name Total Space	✓ Refresh	Format	
> IMP/E	EXP	Free Space			
DEFA	NULT	Address Name	Size	Туре	Delete
		New Folder		Import	Export

Figure 5-258

- <u>Step 2</u> Insert a USB storage device into one of the USB ports on the Device.
- <u>Step 3</u> Click **Refresh** to refresh the interface.

The connected USB storage device is displayed. See Figure 5-259.

 ■ printf_	15.60 GB 15.41 GB /	SK) Ref	resh Format Type Folder Folder	t Delete 音	
AINTAIN Total Space Free Space Address Name IP FSU60 IVSS Remot Printf_	15.60 GB 15.41 GB /		Type Folder	Delete ā	
AAINTAIN Free Space Address Name IP FSU60 FSU60 FSU60 FSU60 FSU60 FSU60 FSU60 FSU60 FSU60 FSU60 FSU60	15.41 GB /	Size	Folder		
Free Space Address Name IP FSU60 TVSS Remoi	<i>1</i> 116U	Size	Folder		
Name ■ IP ■ FSU60 ■ IVSS ■ Remol ■ printf_	116U	Size	Folder		
Name ■ IP ■ FSU60 ■ IVSS ■ Remol ■ printf_	116U	Size	Folder		
L IP L FSU60 LVSS Remo Printf_		Size	Folder		
■ IP ■ FSU60 ■ IVSS ■ Remoi ■ printf_					
■ IVSS ■ Remote ■ printf_			Folder		
■ Remoting	eConfig_20171103141044				
 ■ printf_	eConfig_20171103141044.		Folder		
		.csv 464 B	File	â	
🗎 kmsg_	20171105172349.txt	451.3 K	B File		
	printf_20171105172349.txt	t 14.9 KE	3 File		
🗎 LAN1-	20171107135215.pcap	1.18 MI	B File		
🗎 LAN1-	20171109135008.pcap	9.16 M	B File		
🗎 softmu	isic.mp3	2.14 M	B File		
🗎 lemon	tree.mp3	6.66 M	B File	â	
VID_2	0171105_135734.mp4	43.60 M	IB File		
printf_	20171113101348.txt	30.29 M	IB File		
🖹 IP PT2	Camera_20171116100220	0_201711 527.2 K	B File		
printf_	20171117110546.txt	19.91 M	IB File	亩	
🗎 kmsg_	printf_20171117110546.txt	t 14.8 KE	3 File		
	■ printf_ ■ printf_ ■ IP PTZ ■ printf_	■ printf_20171117110546.txt	□ printf_20171113101348.txt 30.29 M □ IP PTZ Camera_20171116100220_201711 527.2 K □ printf_20171117110546.txt 19.91 M	printf_20171113101348.txt 30.29 MB File IP PTZ Camera_20171116100220_201711 527.2 KB File printf_20171117110546.txt 19.91 MB File	□ printf_20171113101348.txt 30.29 MB File 亩 □ IP PTZ Camera_20171116100220_201711 527.2 KB File 亩 □ printf_20171117110546.txt 19.91 MB File 亩



Step 4 Click Export.

There is a folder under the name style of "Config_[YYYYMMDDhhmmss]". Double-click this folder to view the backup files.

Importing System Settings

- <u>Step 1</u> Insert a USB storage device containing the exported configuration files from another Device) into one of the USB ports on the Device.
- <u>Step 2</u> Select Main Menu > SYSTEM > IMP/EXP. The IMP/EXP interface is displayed.
- <u>Step 3</u> Click **Refresh** to refresh the interface.

The connected USB storage device is displayed.

- <u>Step 4</u> Click on the configuration folder (under the name style of "Config_[YYYYMMDDhhmmss]") that you want to import.
- Step 5 Click Import.

The Device will reboot after the imported is succeeded.

5.19.5 Restoring Default Settings

Only Admin account supports this function.

You can select the settings that you want to restore to the factory default.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > SYSTEM > DEFAULT.

The **DEFAULT** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-260.

	🗱 SYSTEM		LIVE	. د	⇒ <u>- 00</u>	
	GENERAL					
	SECURITY	Please select setting entries that you want to default.				
	SYSTEM MAINTAIN	Select All				
	IMP/EXP	CAMERA				
>	DEFAULT	EVENT				
	UPGRADE	SYSTEM				
		NETWORK				
		STORAGE				
		Factory Default	Apply		Back	

Figure 5-260

Step 2 Restore the settings.

- Select the settings that you want to restore, and then click **Apply**. The system starts restoring the selected settings.
- Click **Factory Default**, and then click **OK**. The system starts restoring the whole settings.

5.19.6 Upgrading the Device

5.19.6.1 Upgrading File

- <u>Step 1</u> Insert a USB storage device containing the upgrade files into the USB port of the Device.
- <u>Step 2</u> Select Main Menu > SYSTEM > UPGRADE. The UPGRADE interface is displayed. See Figure 5-261.

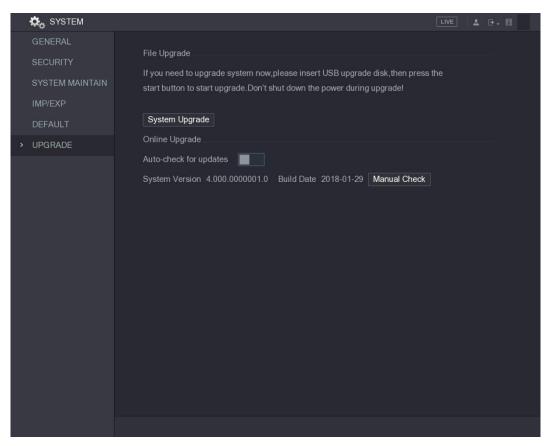


Figure 5-261

Step 3 Click System Upgrade.

The System Upgrade interface is displayed. See Figure 5-262.

System Upgrade				
Device Name	sdb5(USB DISK)	Refresh		
Total Space	15.60 GB			
Free Space	15.60 GB			
Address				
Name		Size	Туре	Delete
🗅 IP			Folder	
RemoteConfig_20	0171103141044.csv	464 B	File	
printf_201711051	72349.txt	451.3 KB	File	
kmsg_printf_201	71105172349.txt	14.9 KB	File	â
🖹 LAN1-201711071	35215.pcap	1.18 MB	File	
Update File				
			Start	Back

Figure 5-262

<u>Step 4</u> Click the file that you want to upgrade.

The selected file is displayed in the Update File box.

Step 5 Click Start.

5.19.6.2 Performing Online Upgrade

When the Device is connected to Internet, you can use online upgrade function to upgrade the system.

Before using this function, you need to check whether there is any new version by auto check or manual check.

- Auto check: The Device checks if there is any new version available at intervals.
- Manual check: Perform real-time check whether there is any new version available.



Ensure the correct power supply and network connection during upgrading; otherwise the upgrading might be failed.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > SYSTEM > UPGRADE.

The UPGRADE interface is displayed. See Figure 5-263.

🌣 SYSTEM		LIVE	
GENERAL			
SECURITY	File Upgrade		
SYSTEM MAIN	If you need to upgrade system now,please insert USB upgrade disk,then press th TAIN start button to start upgrade.Don't shut down the power during upgrade!	ie	
IMP/EXP	star battor to star tapy do bon tonat dominate ponor danny apyrado.		
DEFAULT	System Upgrade		
> UPGRADE	Online Upgrade		
	Auto-check for updates		
	System Version 4.000.0000001.0 Build Date 2018-01-29 Manual Check		

Figure 5-263

<u>Step 2</u> Check whether there is any new version available.

- Auto check: Enable Auto-check for updates.
- Manual check: Click Manual Check.

The system starts checking the new versions. After checking is completed, the check result is displayed.

- If the "It is the latest version" text is displayed, you do not need to upgrade.
- If the text indicating there is a new version, please go the step 3. See Figure 5-264.

ð.	SYSTEM		LIVE	1 G.	. XI
~					
		If you need to upgrade system now, please insert USB upgrade disk, then press the start button to start upgrade. Don't shut down the power during upgrade!			
		System Upgrade Online Upgrade			
		Auto-check for updates			
	DEFAULT	System Version 2.616.0000024.0 Build Date 2017-11-07 Manual Check Found New Version 2.616.0000024.1 Build Date 2017-11-08			
>		New Version information:			
		Upgrade N	ow		





5.19.6.3 Uboot Upgrading



- Under the root directory in the USB storage device, there must be "u-boot.bin.img" file and "update.img" file saved, and the USB storage device must be in FAT32 format.
- Make sure the USB storage device is inserted; otherwise the upgrading cannot be performed.

When starting the Device, the system automatically check whether there is a USB storage device connected and if there is any upgrade file, and if yes and the check result of the upgrade file is correct, the system will upgrade automatically. The Uboot upgrade can avoid the situation that you have to upgrade through +TFTP when the Device is halted.

5.20 Viewing Information

You can view the information such as log information, HDD information, and version details

5.20.1 Viewing Version Details

You can view the version details such as device model, system version, and build date. Select **Main Menu > INFO > VERSION**, the **VERSION** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-265.

	INFO			LIVE	≗ ⊕ - ≞	0
>	VERSION	Device Model	XVR8216A-4KL-I			
	LOG EVENT NETWORK HDD CHANNEL INFO BPS	Record Channel Alarm In Alarm Out Hardware Version	16 16 3 V1.0 V4.200.000000.0 2018-10-10 V3.2.7.104657 0 16.12(V1.2.2.596777)			

Figure 5-265

5.20.2 Viewing Log Information

You can view and search the log information.

NOTE

- If there is no HDD installed, the system can save up to 10,000 logs.
- If there is HDD installed and has been formatted, the system can save up to 500,000 logs.
- If there is HDD installed, the logs about system operations are saved in the memory of the Device and other types of logs are saved into the HDD. If there is no HDD installed, the other types of logs are also saved in the memory of the Device.
- When formatting the HDD, the logs will not be lost. However, if you take out the HDD from the Device, the logs might be lost.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > INFO > LOG.

The **LOG** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-266.

	 INFO 				LIVE	L +
	VERSION	Туре	All			
>	LOG			00.00.00		
	EVENT	Start Time	2018 - 01 - 29	00:00:00		
	NETWORK		2018 - 01 - 29	00 : 00 : 00		Search
	HDD	0 Log Time	Event			
	CHANNEL INFO					
	BPS					
						Details
						Clear

Figure 5-266

- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Type** list, select the log type that you want to view (**System**, **Config**, **Storage**, **Record**, **Account**, **Clear**, **Playback**, and **Connection**) or select **All** to view all logs.
- <u>Step 3</u> In the **Start Time** box and **End Time** box, enter the time period to search, and then click **Search**.

The search results are displayed. See Figure 5-267.

INFO								LIVE	L ⊡ - 🔤
VERSION	Turse		All						
LOG	Туре								
	Start Tir	ne	2018	-01-30	00:00:00	00			
EVENT	End Tim		2018	-01-31	00:00:00	00			Search
NETWORK	39	Log Time		Event					
HDD		2018-01-30 14:5	51:11		TWORK>	config!			
CHANNEL INFO	26	2018-01-30 14:	51:21	HDD Amo	ount<1>, C	Current Wo	orking HDD		
CHANNEL INFO	27	2018-01-30 14:5	51:22	Save <p2< td=""><td>P> config</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></p2<>	P> config				
BPS	28	2018-01-30 14:5	51:22	Save <p2< td=""><td>P> config</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></p2<>	P> config				
		2018-01-30 14:5	51:31	Save <pi< td=""><td>R Alarm></td><td>config!</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></pi<>	R Alarm>	config!			
	30	2018-01-30 14:	51:56	S.M.A.R.	T INFO				
	31	2018-01-30 14:	51:56	S.M.A.R.	T INFO				
	32	2018-01-30 14:5	52:31	Add Grou	p <admin></admin>				
	33	2018-01-30 14:5	52:31	Add Grou	p <user></user>				
	34	2018-01-30 14:	52:31	Add User	<onvif:ad< td=""><td>min></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></onvif:ad<>	min>			
		2018-01-30 14:5	52:31	User logg	ed in. <adr< td=""><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></adr<>				
		2018-01-30 14:5	52:35	Save <g< td=""><td>ENERAL></td><td>config!</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></g<>	ENERAL>	config!			
	37	2018-01-30 14:5	52:36	Save <ne< td=""><td>TWORK></td><td>config!</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></ne<>	TWORK>	config!			
	38	2018-01-30 14:5	52:39	Save <g< td=""><td>ENERAL></td><td>config!</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></g<>	ENERAL>	config!			
	39	2018-01-30 14:9	53:10	User logg	ed in.<12	7.0.0.1>			-
					1/1			Backup	Details Clear

Figure 5-267

- Click **Details** or double-click the log that you want to view, the **Detailed Information** interface is displayed. Click **Next** or **Previous** to view more log information.
- Click **Backup** to back up the logs into the USB storage device.
- Click Clear to remove all logs.

5.20.3 Viewing Event Information

You can view the event information of the Device and channel.

Select Main Menu > INFO > EVENT, the EVENT interface is displayed. See Figure 5-268.

	info info							
	VERSION	Alarm Ty				Alarm Status		
	LOG	Video Lo	ss	13456	78			
>	EVENT							
	NETWORK							
	HDD							
	CHANNEL INFO							
	BPS							
		Refres	۱					

Figure 5-268

5.20.4 Viewing Network Information

You can view the online users, network data transmission details, and test network. For details about testing network, see "5.15.2.1 Testing the Network."

5.20.4.1 Viewing Online Users

You can view the online user information and block any user for a period of time.

Select Main Menu > INFO > NETWORK > Online users, the Online users interface is displayed. See Figure 5-269.

INFO						
VERSION	Online User	Network Load	Network 7	est		
LOG						
EVENT	User I		IP	User Login Time 2017-12-06 17:01:50	Block	
NETWORK	adn	um T.	92.168.12.133	2017-12-06 17:01:50	20	
HDD						
CHANNEL INFO						
BPS						
	Block	60	Sec.			

Figure 5-269

To block an online user, click and then enter the time that you want to block this user. The maximum value you can set is 65535.

The system detects every 5 seconds to check whether there is any user added or deleted, and update the user list timely.

5.20.4.2 Viewing the Network Load

Network load means the data flow which measures the transmission capability. You can view the information such as data receiving speed and sending speed.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > INFO > NETWORK > Network Load.

The Network Load interface is displayed. See Figure 5-270.

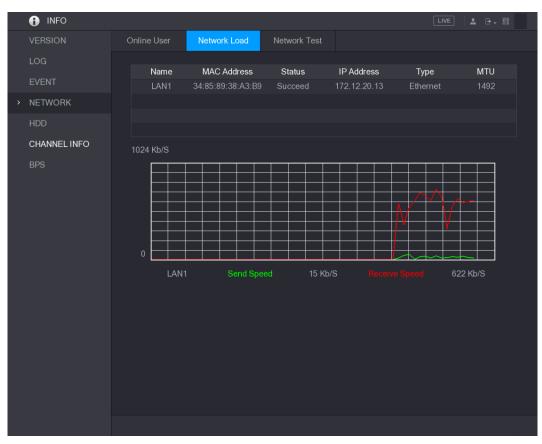


Figure 5-270

Step 2 Click the LAN name that you want to view, for example, LAN1.

The system displays the information of data sending speed and receiving speed. $$\square $\$ NOTE

- The default display is LAN1 load.
- Only one LAN load can be displayed at one time.

5.20.5 Viewing HDD Information

You can view the HDD quantity, HDD type, total space, free space, status, and S.M.A.R.T information.

Select Main Menu > INFO > HDD, the HDD interface is displayed. See Figure 5-271.

INFO					LI	VE 💄 🕂 🗸 📴
VERSION	41	Device News			Tabal Oracia	F
LOG	1* All	Device Name	Physical Position	Туре	Total Space 2.72 TB	Free Space 0.00 MB
EVENT	1*	sda	main board-1	Read/Write	2.72 TB	0.00 MB
NETWORK						
> HDD						
CHANNEL INFO						
BPS						

Figure 5-271

Parameter	Description
No.	Indicates the number of the currently connected HDD. The asterisk (*)
INO.	means the current working HDD.
Device Name	Indicates name of HDD.
Physical Position	Indicates installation position of HDD.
Туре	Indicates HDD type.
Total Space	Indicates the total capacity of HDD.
Free Space	Indicates the usable capacity of HDD.
Status	Indicates the status of the HDD to show if it is working normally.
S.M.A.R.T	View the S.M.A.R.T reports from HDD detecting.

Table 5-75

5.20.6 Viewing Channel Information

You can view the camera information connected to each channel.

Select **Main Menu > INFO > CHANNEL INFO**, the **CHANNEL INFO** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-272.

	VERSION		
	LOG	Channel	Format
	EVENT		1080P 🔵
	NETWORK		
	HDD		
>	CHANNEL INFO	7	
	BPS		

Figure 5-272

5.20.7 Viewing Data Stream Information

You can view the real-time data stream rate and resolution of each channel. Select **Main Menu > INFO > BPS**, the **BPS** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-273.

INFO	LIVE 🕹 🕒 📲
VERSION	
LOG	Channel Kb/S Resolution Wave
EVENT	
NETWORK	2 2057 1920*1080 3 108 2560*1440
1001000	4 109 2560*1440
HDD	5 109 2560*1440
CHANNEL INFO	6 111 2560*1440
> BPS	7 110 2560*1440
	8 110 2560*1440

Figure 5-273

5.21 Logout the Device

On the top right of the Main Menu interface or on any interface after you have entered the Main

Menu, click

- Select Logout, you will log out the device.
- Select **Reboot**, the Device will be rebooted.
- Select **Shutdown**, the Device will be turned off.

6

Web Operations

🛄 NOTE

- The interfaces in the Manual are used for introducing the operations and only for reference. The actual interface might be different dependent on the model you purchased. If there is inconsistency between the Manual and the actual product, the actual product shall govern.
- The Manual is a general document for introducing the product, so there might be some functions described for the Device in the Manual not apply to the model you purchased.
- Besides Web, you can use our Smart PSS to login the device. For detailed information, please refer to Smart PSS user's manual.

6.1 Connecting to Network

- The factory default IP of the Device is 192.168.1.108.
- The Device supports monitoring on different browsers such as Safari, fire fox, Google on Apple PC to perform the functions such as multi-channel monitoring, PTZ control, and device parameters configurations.
- <u>Step 1</u> Check to make sure the Device has connected to the network.
- <u>Step 2</u> Configure the IP address, subnet mask and gateway for the PC and the Device. For details about network configuration of the Device, see "5.1.4.4 Configuring Network Settings."
- <u>Step 3</u> On your PC, check the network connection of the Device by using "ping ***.***.***". Usually the return value of TTL is 255.

6.2 Logging in the Web

<u>Step 1</u> Open the IE browser, enter the IP address of the Device, and then press Enter. The Login in dialog box is displayed. See Figure 6-1.

Alhua TECHNOLOGY	Web Login
٩	
A	
ТСР	
	Forgot Password
Login	



<u>Step 2</u> Enter the user name and password.

- The default administrator account is **admin**. The password is the one that was configured during initial settings. To security your account, it is recommended to keep the password properly and change it regularly.
- Click I to display the password.
- If you forget the password, click Forgot Password to reset the password. For details about resetting the password, see "6.3 Resetting Password."

Step 3 Click Login.

6.3 Resetting Password

You can reset the password by the following methods when you forget the password for admin account.

- If the password reset function is enabled, you can use mobile phone to scan the QR code on the local interface or web interface to reset the password.
- If the password reset function is disabled, the system prompts indicating password resetting function is disabled. To reset the password, try either of the following ways:
 - \diamond Login the web with other user account to enable the password reset function.
 - Go to local interface to reset the password. For details, see "5.1.3 Resetting Password."
- <u>Step 1</u> Login the Web of the Device.

The Login in dialog box is displayed. See Figure 6-2.

alhua TECHNOLOGY	Web Login
2	
A	
ТСР	
	Forgot Password
Login	

Figure 6-2

Step 2 Click Forgot Password.

The Reset Password interface is displayed. See Figure 6-3.

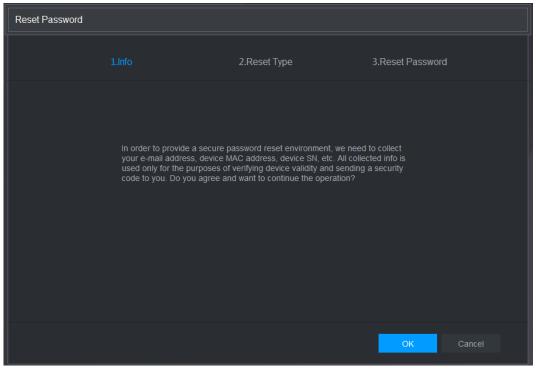


Figure 6-3

Step 3 Click OK.

The reset type interface is displayed. See Figure 6-4.

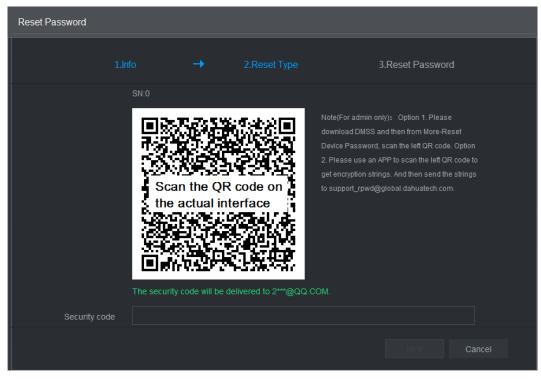


Figure 6-4

Step 4 Follow the onscreen instructions to scan the QR code and get the security code.



- You can get the security code twice by scanning the same QR code. If you need to
 get the security code once again, please refresh the interface.
- Please use the security code received in your email box to reset the password within 24 hours; otherwise the security code becomes invalid.
- Wrong security code entrance up to five times will cause the security code locked for five minutes. After five minutes, you can continue to use this security code.
- <u>Step 5</u> In the **Security code** box, enter the security code received in your reserved email box.
- Step 6 Click Next.

The new password resetting interface is displayed. See Figure 6-5

Reset Password					
		→	2.Reset the passwor		
	User Name	admin			
	Password	•••••			
	Confirm Password	•••••			
				Cancel	Save

Figure 6-5

<u>Step 7</u> In the **Password** box, enter the new password and enter it again in the **Confirm Password** box.

NOTE

The new password can be set from 8 characters through 32 characters and contains at least two types from number, letter and special characters (excluding"", """, ";", ":" and "&").

<u>Step 8</u> Click **Save**. The password resetting is started.

After resetting is completed, a pop-up message is displayed to indicate the result and you will see the login interface is displayed. Then you can use the new password to login the web.

6.4 Introducing Web Main Menu

After you have logged in the Web, the main menu is displayed. See Figure 6-6. For detailed operations, you can refer to "5 Local Configurations."



Figure 6-6

No.	lcon	Description			
1		Includes configuration menu through which you can configure camera settings, network settings, storage settings, system settings, account			
2	None	settings, and view information. Displays system date and time.			
3	.	When you point to . , the current user account is displayed.			
4	• •	Click , select Logout, Reboot, or Shutdown according to your actual situation.			
5		 Displays Cell Phone Client and Device SN QR Code. Cell Phone Client: Use your mobile phone to scan the QR code to add the device into the Cell Phone Client, and then you can start accessing the Device from your cell phone. Device SN: Obtain the Device SN by scanning the QR code. Go to the P2P management platform and add the Device SN into the platform. Then you can access and manage the device in the WAN. For details, please refer to the P2P operation manual. You can also configure P2P function in the local configurations. See "5.1.4.5 Configuring P2P Settings." 			
6		Displays the web main menu.			

No.	Icon	Description
7	None	 Includes eight function tiles: LIVE, VIDEO, ALARM, IoT, AI, BACKUP, DISPLAY, and AUDIO. Click each tile to open the configuration interface of the tile. LIVE: You can perform the operations such as viewing real-time video, configuring channel layout, setting PTZ controls, and using smart talk and instant record functions if needed. VIDEO: Search for and play back the recorded video saved on the Device. ALARM: Search for alarm information and configure alarm event actions. AI: Configure face detection, face recognition, and IVS functions. IoT: You can view, search and export the temperature and humidity data of camera and configure the alarm event settings. BACKUP: Search and back up the video files to the local PC or external storage device such as USB storage device. DISPLAY: Configure the display effect such as displaying content, image transparency, and resolution, and enable the zero-channel function. AUDIO: Manage audio files and configure the playing schedule. The audio file can be played in response to an alarm event if the voice prompts function is enabled.

Table 6-1

7 FAQ

1. DVR cannot boot up properly.

- There are following possibilities:
- Input power is not correct.
- Power connection is not correct.
- Power switch button is damaged.
- Program upgrade is wrong.
- HDD malfunction or something wrong with HDD jumper configuration.
- Seagate DB35.1, DB35.2, SV35 or Maxtor 17-g has compatibility problem. Please upgrade to the latest version to solve this problem.
- Front panel error.
- Main board is damaged.

2. DVR frequently shuts down or stops running.

There are following possibilities:

- Input voltage is not stable or it is too low.
- HDD malfunction or something wrong with jumper configuration.
- Button power is not enough.
- Front video signal is not stable.
- Working environment is too harsh, too much dust.
- Hardware malfunction.

3. Hard disk cannot be detected.

There are following possibilities:

- HDD is broken.
- HDD jumper is damaged.
- HDD cable connection is loose.
- Main board SATA port is broken.

4. There is no video output whether it is one-channel, multiple-channel or all-channel output.

There are following possibilities:

- Program is not compatible. Please upgrade to the latest version.
- Brightness is 0. Please restore factory default setup.
- There is no video input signal or it is too weak.
- Check privacy mask setup or your screen saver.
- DVR hardware malfunctions.

5. Real-time video color is distorted.

There are following possibilities:

- When using BNC output, NTSC and PAL setup is not correct. The real-time video becomes black and white.
- DVR and monitor resistance is not compatible.
- Video transmission is too long or degrading is too huge.
- DVR color or brightness setup is not correct.

6. Cannot search local records.

There are following possibilities:

- HDD jumper is damaged.
- HDD is broken.
- Upgraded program is not compatible.
- The recorded file has been overwritten.
- Record function has been disabled.

7. Video is distorted when searching local records.

There are following possibilities:

- Video quality setup is too low.
- Program read error, bit data is too small. There is mosaic in the full screen. Please restart the DVR to solve this problem.
- HDD data jumper error.
- HDD malfunction.
- DVR hardware malfunctions.

8. No audio under monitor state.

There are following possibilities:

- It is not a power picker.
- It is not a power acoustics.
- Audio cable is damaged.
- DVR hardware malfunctions.

9. There is audio under monitor state but no audio under playback state.

There are following possibilities:

- Setup is not correct. Please enable audio function.
- Corresponding channel has no video input. Playback is not continuous when the screen is blue.

10. System time is not correct.

There are following possibilities:

- Setup is not correct.
- Battery contact is not correct or voltage is too low.
- Crystal oscillator is broken.

11. Cannot control PTZ on DVR.

There are following possibilities:

- Front panel PTZ error.
- PTZ decoder setup, connection or installation is not correct.
- Cable connection is not correct.
- PTZ setup is not correct.
- PTZ decoder and DVR protocol is not compatible.
- PTZ decoder and DVR address is not compatible.
- When there are several decoders, please add 120 Ohm between the PTZ decoder A/B cables furthest end to delete the reverberation or impedance matching. Otherwise the PTZ control is not stable.
- The distance is too far.

12. Motion detection function does not work.

There are following possibilities:

- Period setup is not correct.
- Motion detection zone setup is not correct.

- Sensitivity is too low.
- For some versions, there is hardware limit.

13. Cannot log in client-end or web.

There are following possibilities:

- For Windows 98 or Windows ME user, please update your system to Windows 2000 sp4. Or you can install client-end software of lower version. Please note right now, our DVR is not compatible with Windows VISTA control.
- ActiveX control has been disabled.
- No dx8.1 or higher. Please upgrade display card driver.
- Network connection error.
- Network setup error.
- Password or user name is invalid.
- Client-end is not compatible with DVR program.

14. There is only mosaic no video when preview or playback video file remotely.

There are following possibilities:

- Network fluency is not good.
- Client-end resources are limit.
- There is multiple-cast group setup in DVR. This mode can result in mosaic. Usually we do not recommend this mode.
- There is privacy mask or channel protection setup.
- Current user has no right to monitor.
- DVR local video output quality is not good.

15. Network connection is not stable.

There are following possibilities:

- Network is not stable.
- IP address conflict.
- MAC address conflict.
- PC or DVR network card is not good.

16. Burn error /USB back error.

There are following possibilities:

- Burner and DVR are in the same data cable.
- System uses too much CPU resources. Please stop record first and then begin backup.
- Data amount exceeds backup device capacity. It might result in burner error.
- Backup device is not compatible.
- Backup device is damaged.

17. Keyboard cannot control DVR

There are following possibilities:

- DVR serial port setup is not correct.
- Address is not correct.
- When there are several switchers, power supply is not enough.
- Transmission distance is too far.

18. Alarm signal cannot be disarmed.

There are following possibilities:

- Alarm setup is not correct.
- Alarm output has been open manually.
- Input device error or connection is not correct.

• Some program versions might have this problem. Please upgrade your system.

19. Alarm function is null.

There are following possibilities:

- Alarm setup is not correct.
- Alarm cable connection is not correct.
- Alarm input signal is not correct.
- There are two loops connect to one alarm device.

20. Remote control does not work.

There are following possibilities:

- Remote control address is not correct.
- Distance is too far or control angle is too small.
- Remote control battery power is low.
- Remote control is damaged or DVR front panel is damaged.

21. Record storage period is not enough.

There are following possibilities:

- Camera quality is too low. Lens is dirty. Camera is installed against the light. Camera aperture setup is not correct.
- HDD capacity is not enough.
- HDD is damaged.

22. Cannot playback the downloaded file.

There are following possibilities:

- There is no media player.
- No DXB8.1 or higher graphic acceleration software.
- There is no DivX503Bundle.exe control when you play the file transformed to AVI via media player.
- No DivX503Bundle.exe or ffdshow-2004 1012 .exe in Windows XP OS.

23. Forgot local menu operation password or network password

Please contact your local service engineer or our sales person for help. We can guide you to solve this problem.

24. When I login via HTTPS, a dialogue says the certificate for this website is for other address.

Please create server certificate again.

25. When I login via HTTPS, a dialogue says the certificate is not trusted.

Please download root certificate again.

26. When I login via HTTPS, a dialogue says the certificate has expired or is not valid yet.

Please make sure your PC time is the same as the device time.

27. I connect the general analog camera to the device, there is no video output.

There are following possibilities:

- Check camera power supplying, data cable connection and other items.
- This series device does not support the analog camera of all brands. Please make sure the device supports general standard definition analog camera.

28. I connect the standard definition analog camera or the coaxial camera to the device, there is no video output.

There are following possibilities:

• Check camera power supplying, or camera data cable connection.

 For the product supports analog standard definition camera/HD camera, you need to go to the Main Menu > CAMERA > CHANNEL TYPE to select corresponding channel type and then restart the DVR.

29. I cannot connect to the IP channel.

There are following possibilities:

- Check the camera is online or not.
- Check IP channel setup is right or not (such as IP address, user name, password, connection protocol, and port number).
- The camera has set the whitelist (Only the specified devices can connect to the camera).

30. After I connected to the IP channel, the one-window output is OK, but there is no

multiple-window output.

There are following possibilities:

- Check the sub stream of the camera has been enabled or not.
- Check the sub stream type of the camera is H.264 or not.
- Check the device supports camera sub stream resolution or not (such as 960H, D1, and HD1).

31. After I connected to the IP channel, the multiple-window output is OK, but there is no one-window output.

There are following possibilities:

- Check there is video from the IP channel or not. Please go to the Main Menu > INFO > BPS to view bit stream real-time information.
- Check the main stream of the camera has been enabled or not.
- Check the main stream type of the camera is H.264 or not.
- Check the device supports camera main stream resolution or not (such as 960H, D1, and HD1).
- Check camera network transmission has reached the threshold or not. Please check the online user of the camera.

32. After I connected to the IP channel, there is no video output in the one-window or the multiple-window mode. But I can see there is bit stream.

There are following possibilities:

- Check the main stream/sub stream type of the camera is H.264 or not.
- Check the device supports camera main stream/sub stream resolution or not (such as 1080P, 720P, 960H, D1, and HD1).
- Check the camera setup. Please make sure It supports the products of other manufacturers.

33. DDNS registration failed or cannot access the device domain name.

There are following possibilities:

- Check the device is connected to the WAN. Please check the device has got the IP address if the PPPoE can dial. If there is a router, please check the router to make sure the device IP is online.
- Check the corresponding protocol of the DDNS is enabled. Check the DDNS function is OK or not.
- Check DNS setup is right or not. Default Google DNS server is 8.8.8.8, 8.8.5.5. You can use different DNS provided by your ISP.

34. I cannot use the P2P function on my cell phone or the WEB.

There are following possibilities:

- Check the device P2P function is enabled or not. (Main menu->Setting->Network->P2P)
- Check the device is in the WAN or not.
- Check cell phone P2P login mode is right or not.
- It is the specified device P2P login port or not when you are using P2P client.
- Check user name or password is right or not.
- Check P2P SN is right or not. You can use the cell phone to scan the QR code on the device P2P interface (Main Menu > Network > P2P), or you can use the version information of the WEB to confirm. (For some previous series products, the device SN is the main board SN, it might result in error.)

35. I connect the standard definition camera to the device, there is no video output.

There are following possibilities:

- Check the DVR supports standard definition signal or not. Only some series product supports analog standard definition signal, coaxial signal input.
- Check channel type is right or not. For the product supports analog standard definition camera/HD camera, you need to go to the **Main Menu > CAMERA > CHANNEL TYPE** to select corresponding channel type (such as analog) and then restart the DVR. In this way, the DVR can recognize the analog standard definition.
- Check camera power supplying, or camera data cable connection.

36. I cannot connect to the IP camera.

There are following possibilities:

- Check DVR supports IP channel or not. Only some series products support A/D switch function, it can switch analog channel to the IP channel to connect to the IP camera. From Main Menu > CAMERA > CHANNEL TYPE, select the last channel to switch to the IP channel. Some series product products support IP channel extension, it supports N+N mode.
- Check the IPC and the DVR is connected or not. Please go to the Main Menu > CAMERA > REGISTRATION to search to view the IP camera is online or not. Or you can go to the Main Menu > INFO > NETWORK > Network Test, you can input IP camera IP address and then click the Test button to check you can connect to the IP camera or not.
- Check IP channel setup is right or not (such as IP address, manufacturer, port, user name, password, and remote channel number).

Daily Maintenance

- Please use the brush to clean the board, socket connector and the chassis regularly.
- The device shall be soundly earthed in case there is audio/video disturbance. Keep the device away from the static voltage or induced voltage.
- Please unplug the power cable before you remove the audio/video signal cable, RS-232 or RS-485 cable.
- Do not connect the TV to the local video output port (VOUT). It might result in video output circuit.
- Always shut down the device properly. Please use the shutdown function in the menu, or you can press the power button in the front panel for at least three seconds to shut down the device. Otherwise it might result in HDD malfunction.
- Please make sure the device is away from the direct sunlight or other heating sources. Please keep the sound ventilation.
- Please check and maintain the device regularly.

The abbreviations in this glossary are related to the Manual.

Abbreviations	Full term
BNC	Bayonet Nut Connector
CBR	Constant Bit Rate
CIF	Common Intermediate Format
DDNS	Dynamic Domain Name Service
DHCP	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
DNS	Domain Name System
DST	Daylight Saving Time
DVR	Digital Video Recorder
FTP	File Transfer Protocol
HDD	Hard Disk Drive
HDMI	High Definition Multimedia Interface
HTTP	Hyper Text Transfer Protocol
IoT	Internet of Things
IP	Internet Protocol
IVS	Intelligent Video System
LAN	Local Area Network
MAC	Media Access Control
MTU	Maximum Transmission Unit
NTP	Network Time Protocol
NTSC	National Television Standards Committee
ONVIF	Open Network Video Interface Forum
PAL	Phase Alteration Line
PAT	Port Address Translation
POS	Point of Sale
PPPoE	Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet
PSS	Professional Surveillance Software
PTZ	Pan Tilt Zoom
RCA	Radio Corporation of American
RTSP	Real Time Streaming Protocol
S.M.A.R.T	Self-Monitoring-Analysis and Reporting Technology
SATA	Serial Advanced Technology Attachment
SMTP	Simple Mail Transfer Protocol
SNMP	Simple Network Management Protocol
ТСР	Transmission Control Protocol
TFTP	Trivial File Transfer Protocol
UDP	User Datagram Protocol
UPnP	Universal Plug and Play
VBR	Variable Bit Rate

Abbreviations	Full term
VGA	Video Graphics Array
WAN	Wide Area Network

Calculate total capacity needed by each DVR according to video recording (video recording type and video file storage time).

<u>Step 1</u> According to Formula (1) to calculate storage capacity q_i that is the capacity of each channel needed for each hour, unit MB.

Formula (1):
$$q_i = d_i \div 8 \times 3600 \div 1024$$

In the formula: d_i means the bit rate, unit Kbit/s

<u>Step 2</u> After video time requirement is confirmed, according to Formula (2) to calculate the storage capacity m_i , which is storage of each channel needed unit MB.

Formula (2):
$$m_i = q_i \times h_i \times D_i$$

In the formula:

- h_i means the recording time for each day (hour)
- D_i means number of days for which the video shall be kept
- <u>Step 3</u> According to Formula (3) to calculate total capacity (accumulation) q_T that is needed for all channels in the DVR during **scheduled video recording**.

Formula (3):
$$q_T = \sum_{i=1}^{c} m_i$$

In the formula: c means total number of channels in one DVR

<u>Step 4</u> According to Formula (4) to calculate total capacity (accumulation) q_T that is needed for all channels in DVR during **alarm video recording (including motion detection)**.

Formula (4):
$$q_T = \sum_{i=1}^{c} m_i \times a\%$$

In the formula: a% means alarm occurrence rate

You can refer to the following table for the file size in one hour per channel. (All the data listed below are for reference only.)

Bit stream size (max)	File size	Bit stream size (max)	File size
96Kbps	42MB	128Kbps	56MB
160Kbps	70MB	192Kbps	84MB
224Kbps	98MB	256Kbps	112MB
320Kbps	140MB	384Kbps	168MB
448Kbps	196MB	512Kbps	225MB

Bit stream size (max)	File size	Bit stream size (max)	File size
640Kbps	281MB	768Kbps	337MB
896Kbps	393MB	1024Kbps	450MB
1280Kbps	562MB	1536Kbps	675MB
1792Kbps	787MB	2048Kbps	900MB

Appendix 3.1 Compatible USB list

Manufacturer	Model	Capacity	
Sandisk	Cruzer Micro	512MB	
Sandisk	Cruzer Micro	1GB	
Sandisk	Cruzer Micro	2GB	
Sandisk	Cruzer Freedom	256MB	
Sandisk	Cruzer Freedom	512MB	
Sandisk	Cruzer Freedom	1GB	
Sandisk	Cruzer Freedom	2GB	
Kingston	DataTraveler II	1GB	
Kingston	DataTraveler II	2GB	
Kingston	DataTraveler	1GB	
Kingston	DataTraveler	2GB	
Maxell	USB Flash Stick	128MB	
Maxell	USB Flash Stick	256MB	
Maxell	USB Flash Stick	512MB	
Maxell	USB Flash Stick	1GB	
Maxell	USB Flash Stick	2GB	
Kingax	Super Stick	128MB	
Kingax	Super Stick	256MB	
Kingax	Super Stick	512MB	
Kingax	Super Stick	1GB	
Kingax	Super Stick	2GB	
Netac	U210	128MB	
Netac	U210	256MB	
Netac	U210	512MB	
Netac	U210	1GB	
Netac	U210	2GB	
Netac	U208	4GB	
Teclast	Ti Cool	128MB	
Teclast	Ti Cool	256MB	
Teclast	Ti Cool	512MB	
Teclast	Ti Cool	1GB	
Sandisk	Cruzer Micro	2GB	
Sandisk	Cruzer Micro	8GB	
Sandisk	Ti Cool	2GB	
Sandisk	Hongjiao	4GB	
Lexar	Lexar	256MB	

Manufacturer Model		Capacity
Kingston	Data Traveler	1GB
Kingston	Data Traveler	16GB
Kingston	Data Traveler	32GB
Aigo	L8315	16GB
Sandisk	250	16GB
Kingston	Data Traveler Locker+	32GB
Netac	U228	8GB

Appendix 3.2 Compatible SD Card list

Manufacturer	Standard	Capacity	Card type
Transcend	SDHC6	16GB	Big
Kingston	SDHC4	4GB	Big
Kingston	SD	2GB	Big
Kingston	SD	1GB	Big
Sandisk	SDHC2	8GB	Small
Sandisk	SD	1GB	Small

Appendix 3.3 Compatible Portable HDD list

Manufacturer	Model	Capacity
YDStar	YDstar HDD box	40GB
Netac	Netac	80GB
lomega	Iomega RPHD-CG" RNAJ50U287	250GB
WD Elements	WCAVY1205901	1.5TB
Newsmy	Liangjian	320GB
WD Elements	WDBAAR5000ABK-00	500GB
WD Elements	WDBAAU0015HBK-00	1.5TB
Seagate	FreeAgent Go(ST905003F)	500GB
Aigo	H8169	500GB

Appendix 3.4 Compatible USB DVD List

Manufacturer	Model
Samsung	SE-S084
BenQ	LD2000-2K4

Appendix 3.5 Compatible SATA DVD List

Manufacturer	Model
LG	GH22NS30

Manufacturer	Model
Samsung	TS-H653 Ver.A
Samsung	TS-H653 Ver.F
Samsung	SH-224BB/CHXH
SONY	DRU-V200S
SONY	DRU-845S
SONY	AW-G170S
Pioneer	DVR-217CH

Appendix 3.6 Compatible SATA HDD List

Please upgrade the DVR firmware to latest version to ensure the accuracy of the table below. Here we recommend HDD of 500GB to 4TB capacity.

Manufacturer	Series	Model	Capacity	Port Mode
Seagate	Video 3.5	ST1000VM002	1TB	SATA
Seagate	Video 3.5	ST2000VM003	2TB	SATA
Seagate	Video 3.5	ST3000VM002	3TB	SATA
Seagate	Video 3.5	ST4000VM000	4TB	SATA
Seagate	SV35	ST1000VX000	1TB	SATA
Seagate	SV35	ST2000VX000	2TB	SATA
Seagate	SV35	ST3000VX000	3TB	SATA
Seagate	SV35 (Support HDD	ST1000VX002	1TB	SATA
	data recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
Seagate	SV35 (Support HDD	ST2000VX004	2TB	SATA
	data recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
Seagate	SV35 (Support HDD	ST3000VX004	3TB	SATA
	data recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST1000VX001	1TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST1000VX005	1TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST2000VX003	2TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST2000VX008	2TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST3000VX006	3TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST3000VX010	3TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST4000VX000	4TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST4000VX007	4TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST5000VX0001	5TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST6000VX0001	6TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST6000VX0023	6TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST6000VX0003	6TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST8000VX0002	8TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST8000VX0022	8TB	SATA

Manufacturer	Series	Model	Capacity	Port Mode
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST100000VX0004	10TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST1000VX003	1TB	SATA
0	(Support HDD data			
	recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
Seagate	(Support HDD data	ST2000VX005	2TB	SATA
	recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
Seagate	(Support HDD data	ST3000VX005	3TB	SATA
	recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
Seagate	(Support HDD data	ST4000VX002	4TB	SATA
	recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
Seagate	(Support HDD data	ST5000VX0011	5TB	SATA
	recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
Seagate	(Support HDD data	ST6000VX0011	6TB	SATA
	recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
Seagate	(Support HDD data	ST8000VX0012	8TB	SATA
	recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
WD	WD Green	WD10EURX (EOL)	1TB	SATA
WD	WD Green	WD20EURX (EOL)	2TB	SATA
WD	WD Green	WD30EURX (EOL)	3TB	SATA
WD	WD Green	WD40EURX (EOL)	4TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD10PURX	1TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD20PURX	2TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD30PURX	3TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD40PURX	4TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD50PURX	5TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD60PURX	6TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD80PUZX	8TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD10PURZ	1TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD20PURZ	2TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD30PURZ	3TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD40PURZ	4TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD50PURZ	5TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD60PURZ	6TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD80PURZ	8TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD4NPURX	4TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD6NPURX	6TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	Mars	DT01ABA100V	1TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	Mars	DT01ABA200V	2TB	SATA

TOSHIBA S TOSHIBA S	Mars	DT01ABA300V		
TOSHIBA S			3TB	SATA
	Sonance	MD03ACA200V	2TB	SATA
TOSHIBA S	Sonance	MD03ACA300V	3TB	SATA
	Sonance	MD03ACA400V	4TB	SATA
TOSHIBA S	Sonance	MD04ABA400V	4TB	SATA
TOSHIBA S	Sonance	MD04ABA500V	5TB	SATA
Seagate C	Constellation ES series	ST1000NM0033	1TB	SATA
(\$	SATA interface)			
Seagate C	Constellation ES series	ST2000NM0033	2TB	SATA
(\$	SATA interface)			
Seagate C	Constellation ES series	ST3000NM0033	3TB	SATA
(\$	SATA interface)			
Seagate C	Constellation ES series	ST4000NM0033	4TB	SATA
(\$	SATA interface)			
Seagate C	Constellation ES series	ST1000NM0055	1TB	SATA
(\$	SATA interface)			
Seagate C	Constellation ES series	ST2000NM0055	2TB	SATA
(\$	SATA interface)			
Seagate C	Constellation ES series	ST3000NM0005	3TB	SATA
(\$	SATA interface)			
Seagate C	Constellation ES series	ST4000NM0035	4TB	SATA
(\$	SATA interface)			
5	Constellation ES series	ST6000NM0115	6TB	SATA
	SATA interface)			
5	Constellation ES series	ST8000NM0055	8TB	SATA
,	SATA interface)	• -		
U	Constellation ES series	ST10000NM0016	10TB	SATA
· · · · ·	SATA interface)	07 4000 11 4000 4		0.71
5	Constellation ES series	ST4000NM0024	4TB	SATA
	SATA interface)			0.070
	Constellation ES series	ST6000NM0024	6TB	SATA
	SATA interface) Constellation ES series	ST1000NM0023	1TB	SATA
5	SAS interface)	ST 1000INIVI0023	IID	SAIA
	Constellation ES series	ST2000NM0023	2TB	SATA
•	SAS interface)	312000110023	210	SAIA
	Constellation ES series	ST3000NM0023	3TB	SATA
•	SAS interface)	0130001NIM0023	510	
	Constellation ES series	ST4000NM0023	4TB	SATA
J	SAS interface)			
	Constellation ES series	ST6000NM0014	6TB	SATA
5	SAS interface)			
	Constellation ES series	ST1000NM0045	1TB	SATA
Ũ	SAS interface)			

Manufacturer	Series	Model	Capacity	Port Mode
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST2000NM0045	2TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST3000NM0025	3TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST4000NM0025	4TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST6000NM0095	6TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST6000NM0034	6TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST8000NM0075	8TB	SATA
WD	WD RE series (SATA interface)	WD1003FBYZ	1TB	SATA
WD	WD RE series (SATA interface)	WD1004FBYZ (replace WD1003FBYZ)	1TB	SATA
WD	WD RE series (SATA interface)	WD2000FYYZ	2TB	SATA
WD	WD RE series (SATA interface)	WD2004FBYZ (replace WD2000FYYZ)	2TB	SATA
WD	WD RE series (SATA interface)	WD3000FYYZ	3TB	SATA
WD	WD RE series (SATA interface)	WD4000FYYZ	4TB	SATA
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD2000F9YZ	2TB	SATA
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD3000F9YZ	3TB	SATA
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD4000F9YZ	4TB	SATA
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD4002FYYZ	4TB	SATA
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD6001FSYZ	6TB	SATA
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD6002FRYZ	6TB	SATA
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD8002FRYZ	8TB	SATA
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SATA interface)	HUS724030ALA640	3TB	SATA
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SATA interface)	HUS726060ALE610	6TB	SATA
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SATA interface)	HUH728060ALE600	6TB	SATA
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SATA interface)	HUH728080ALE600	8TB	SATA
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SAS interface)	HUS726020AL5210	2TB	SATA
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SAS interface)	HUS726040AL5210	4TB	SATA

Manufacturer	Series	Model	Capacity	Port Mode
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SAS	HUS726060AL5210	6TB	SATA
	interface)			
Seagate	Pipeline HD Mini	ST320VT000	320GB	SATA
Seagate	Pipeline HD Mini	ST500VT000	500GB	SATA
Seagate	Pipeline HD Mini	ST2000LM003 (EOL)	2TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	2.5-inch PC series	MQ01ABD050V	500GB	SATA
TOSHIBA	2.5-inch PC series	MQ01ABD100V	1TB	SATA
SAMSUNG	HN-M101MBB	HN-M101MBB (EOL)	1TB	SATA
Seagate	2.5-inch enterprise	ST1000NX0313	1TB	SATA
	series			
Seagate	2.5-inch enterprise	ST2000NX0253	2TB	SATA
	series			

Please upgrade the DVR firmware to latest version to ensure the accuracy of the table below. And you can use the USB cable with the model recommended to set USB burner.

Manufacturer	Model	Port Type	Туре
Sony	DRX-S50U	USB	DVD-RW
Sony	DRX-S70U	USB	DVD-RW
Sony	AW-G170S	SATA	DVD-RW
Samsung	TS-H653A	SATA	DVD-RW
Panasonic	SW-9588-C	SATA	DVD-RW
Sony	DRX-S50U	USB	DVD-RW
BenQ	5232WI	USB	DVD-RW

Please refer to the following table form compatible displayer list.				
Brand	Model	Dimension (Unit: inch)		
BENQ (LCD)	ET-0007-TA	19-inch (wide screen)		
DELL (LCD)	E178FPc	17-inch		
BENQ (LCD)	Q7T4	17-inch		
BENQ (LCD)	Q7T3	17-inch		
HFNOVO (LCD)	LXB-L17C	17-inch		
SANGSUNG (LCD)	225BW	22-inch (wide screen)		
HFNOVO (CRT)	LXB-FD17069HB	17-inch		
HFNOVO (CRT)	LXB-HF769A	17-inch		
HFNOVO(CRT)	LX-GJ556D	17-inch		
Samsung (LCD)	2494HS	24-inch		
Samsung (LCD)	P2350	23-inch		
Samsung (LCD)	P2250	22-inch		
Samsung (LCD)	P2370G	23-inch		
Samsung (LCD)	2043	20-inch		
Samsung (LCD)	2243EW	22-inch		
Samsung (LCD)	SMT-1922P	19-inch		
Samsung (LCD)	T190	19-inch		
Samsung (LCD)	T240	24-inch		
LG (LCD)	W1942SP	19-inch		
LG (LCD)	W2243S	22-inch		
LG (LCD)	W2343T	23-inch		
BENQ (LCD)	G900HD	18.5-inch		
BENQ (LCD)	G2220HD	22-inch		
PHILIPS (LCD)	230E	23-inch		
PHILIPS (LCD)	220CW9	23-inch		
PHILIPS (LCD)	220BW9	24-inch		
PHILIPS (LCD)	220EW9	25-inch		

_.

Brand	Model	network working mode	
D-LinK	DES-1016D	10/100M self-adaptive	
D-LinK	DES-1008D	10/100M self-adaptive	
		Five network modes:	
		AUTO	
Ruijie	RG-S1926S	HALF-10M	
Kuljie	KG-319203	FULL-10M	
		HALF-100M	
		FULL-100M	
H3C	H3C-S1024	10/100M self-adaptive	
TP-LINK	TL-SF1016	10/100M self-adaptive	
TP-LINK	TL-SF1008+	10/100M self-adaptive	

Appendix 7.1 What Is the Surge

Surge is a short current or voltage change during a very short time. In the circuit, it lasts for microsecond. In a 220V circuit, the 5KV or 10KV voltage change during a very short time (about microseconds) can be called a surge. The surge comes from two ways: external surge and internal surge.

- The external surge: The external surge mainly comes from the thunder lightning. Or it comes from the voltage change during the on/off operation in the electric power cable.
- The internal surge: The research finds 88% of the surge from the low voltage comes from the internal of the building such as the air conditioning, elevator, electric welding, air compressor, water pump, power button, duplicating machine and other device of inductive load.

The lightning surge is far above the load level the PC or the micro devices can support. In most cases, the surge can result in electric device chip damage, PC error code, accelerating the part aging, data loss and etc. Even when a small 20 horsepower inductive engine boots up or stops, the surge can reach 3000V to 5000V, which can adversely affect the electronic devices that use the same distribution box.

To protect the device, you need to evaluate its environment, the lighting affection degree objectively. Because surge has close relationship with the voltage amplitude, frequency, network structure, device voltage-resistance, protection level, ground and etc. The thunder proof work shall be a systematic project, emphasizing the all-round protection (including building, transmission cable, device, ground and etc.). There shall be comprehensive management and the measures shall be scientific, reliable, practical and economic. Considering the high voltage during the inductive thundering, the International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) standard on the energy absorbing step by step theory and magnitude classification in the protection zone, you need to prepare multiple precaution levels.

You can use the lightning rod, lightning strap or the lightning net to reduce the damage to the building, personal injury or the property.

The lightning protection device can be divided into three types:

- Power lightning arrester: There are 220V single-phrase lightning arrester and 380V three-phrase lightening arrester (mainly in parallel connection, sometimes use series connection) You can parallel connect the power lightning arrester in the electric cable to reduce the short-time voltage change and release the surge current. From the BUS to the device, there are usually three levels so that system can reduce the voltage and release the current step by step to remove the thunderstorm energy and guarantee the device safety. You can select the replaceable module type, the terminal connection type and portable socket according to your requirement.
- Signal lightning arrester: This device is mainly used in the PC network, communication system. The connection type is serial connection. Once you connected the signal lightning

arrestor with the signal port, it can cut the channel of the thunderstorm to the device, and on the other hand, it can discharge the current to the ground to guarantee the device proper work. The signal lightning arrester has many specifications, and widely used in many devices such as telephone, network, analog communication, digital communication, cable TV and satellite antenna. For all the input port, especially those from the outdoor, you need to install the signal lightning arrester.

• Antenna feed cable lightning arrester: It is suitable for antenna system of the transmitter or the device system to receive the wireless signal. It uses the serial connection too.

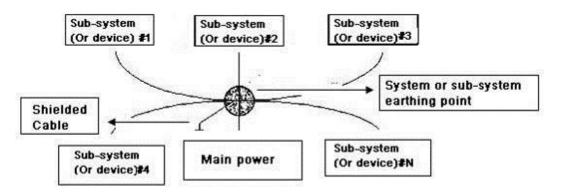
Please note, when you select the lighting arrester, please pay attention to the port type and the earthing reliability. In some important environment, you need to use special shielded cable. Do not parallel connect the thunder proof ground cable with the ground cable of the lightning rod. Please make sure they are far enough and grounded respectively.

Appendix 7.2 The Earthing Modes

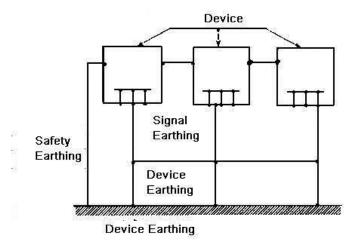
We all know the earthing is the most complicated technology in the electromagnetism compatibility design since there is no systematic theory or module. The earthing has many modes, but the selection depends on the system structure and performance.

The following are some successfully experience from our past work.

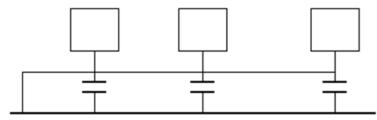
• **One-point ground:** In the following figure you can see there is a one-point ground. This connection provides common point to allow signal to be transmitted in many circuits. If there is no common point, the error signal transmission occurred. In the one-point ground mode, each circuit is just grounded only and they are connected at the same point. Since there is only one common point, there is no circuit and so, there is no interference.



• **Multiple-point ground:** In the following figure, you can see the internal circuit uses the chassis as the common point. While at the same time, all devices chassis use the earthing as the common point. In this connection, the ground structure can provide the lower ground resistance because when there are multiple-point grounds; each ground cable is as short as possible. And the parallel cable connection can reduce the total conductance of the ground conductor. In the high-frequency circuit, you need to use the multiple-point ground mode and each cable needs to connect to the ground. The length shall be less than the 1/20 of the signal wavelength.



• **Mixed ground:** The mix ground consists of the feature of the one-point ground and multiple-point ground. For example, the power in the system needs to use the one-point ground mode while the radio frequency signal requires the multiple-point ground. So, you can use the following figure to earth. For the direct current (DC), the capacitance is open circuit and the circuit is one-point ground. For the radio frequency signal, the capacitance is conducive and the circuit adopts multiple-point ground.



When connecting devices of huge size (the device physical dimension and connection cable is big comparing with the wave path of existed interference), then there are possibility of interference when the current goes through the chassis and cable. In this situation, the interference circuit path usually lies in the system ground circuit.

When considering the earthing, you need to think about two aspects: One is the system compatibility, and the other is the external interference coupling into the earth circuit, which results in system error. For the external interference is not regular, it is not easy to resolve.

Appendix 7.3 Thunder Proof Ground Method in the Monitor System

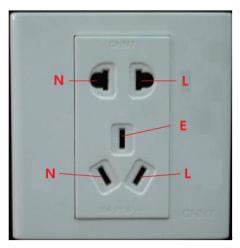
- The monitor system shall have sound thunder proof earthing to guarantee personnel safety and device safety.
- The monitor system working ground resistance shall be less than 1Ω.
- The thunder proof ground shall adopt the special ground cable from the monitor control room to the ground object. The ground cable adopts copper insulation cable or wire and its ground section shall be more than 20mm².
- The ground cable of the monitor system can not short circuit or mixed connected with the strong alternative current cable.
- For all the ground cables from the control room to the monitor system or ground cable of other monitor devices, please use the copper resistance soft cable and its section shall be

more than 4mm².

- The monitor system usually can adopt the one-point ground.
- Please connect the ground end of 3-pin socket in the monitor system to the ground port of the system (protection ground cable)

Appendix 7.4 The Shortcut Way to Check the Electric System by Digital Multimeter

For 220V AC socket, from the top to the bottom, E (ground cable), N (neutral cable), L(live cable). Please refer to the following figure.

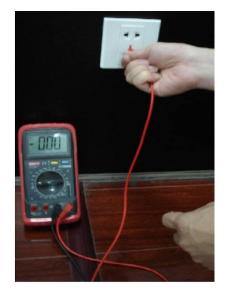


There is a shortcut way to check these thee cables connection are standard or not (not the accurate check).

In the following operations, the multimeter range shall be at 750V.

For E (earth cable)

Turn the digital multimeter to 750V AC, use your one hand to hold the metal end, and then the other hand insert the pen to the E port of the socket. See the following figure. If the multimeter shows 0, then you can see current earth cable connection is standard. If the value is more than 10, then you can know there is inductive current and the earth cable connection is not proper.



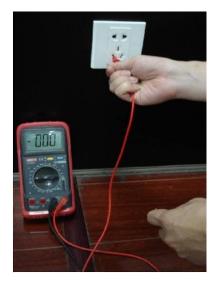
For L (live cable)

Turn the digital multimeter to 750V AC, use your one hand to hold the metal end, and then the other hand insert the pen to the L port of the socket. See the following figure. If the multimeter shows 125, then you can see current live cable connection is standard. If the value is less than 60, then you can know current live cable connection is not proper or it is not the live cable at all.

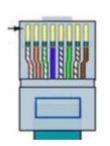


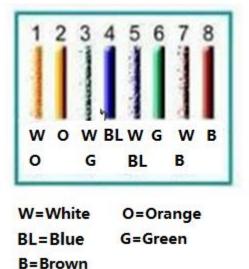
For N (Neutral cable)

Turn the digital multimeter to 750V AC, use your one hand to hold the metal end, and then the other hand insert the pen to the N port of the socket. See the following figure. If the multimeter shows 0, then you can see current N cable connection is standard. If the value is more than 10, then you can see there is inductive current and the neutral cable connection is not proper. If the value is 120, then you can know that you have misconnected the neutral cable to the live cable.

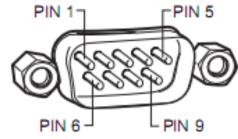


Here we are going to make standard RS-232 port and standard RJ45 (T568B). Please refer to the following figure for RJ45 cable definition.



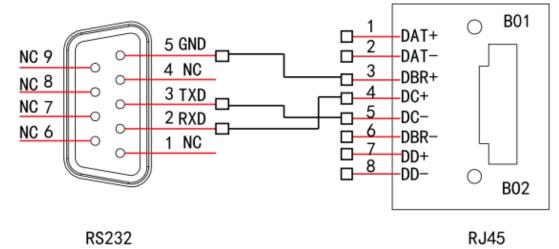


Please refer to the following figure for RS-232 pin definition.



Cross Connection

Please refer to the following figure for connection information.

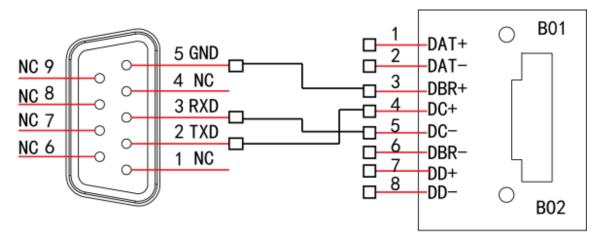


Please refer to the following table for detailed crossover cable connection information.

RJ45 (T568B)	RJ45 (Network cable)	RS-232	Signal Description
4	Blue	2	RXD
5	White and blue	3	TXD
3	White and green	5	GND

Straight Connection

Please refer to the following figure for straight cable connection information.



RS232

RJ45

Please refer to the following table for straight connection information.

RJ45 (T568B)	RJ45 (Network cable)	RS-232	Signal Description
4	Blue	3	RXD
5	White and blue	2	TXD
3	White and green	5	GND

ZHEJIANG DAHUA VISION TECHNOLOGY CO., LTD.

Address: No.1199, Bin'an Road, Binjiang District, Hangzhou, P.R. China Postcode: 310053 Tel: +86-571-87688883 Fax: +86-571-87688815 Email: overseas@dahuatech.com Website: www.dahuasecurity.com